



**HP Color LaserJet MFP E78625/E78630/E78635,
HP Color LaserJet Flow E78625/E78630/E78635,
HP LaserJet MFP E73130/E73135/E73140,
HP LaserJet Flow E73130/E73135/E73140**

Security Target

Version: 1.6
Status: Final
Last Update: 2023-01-27
Classification: Public

Trademarks

The following terms are trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P. in the United States, other countries, or both.

- HP®

The following terms are trademarks of Arm Holdings plc in the United States, other countries, or both.

- Arm®
- Cortex®

Linux® is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.

The following term is a trademark of Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) in the United States, other countries, or both.

- Kerberos™

The following terms are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

- Microsoft®
- SharePoint®
- Windows®

The following term is a trademark of INSIDE Secure in the United States, other countries, or both.

- INSIDE Secure®
- QuickSec®

The following terms are trademarks of the OpenSSL Software Foundation in the United States, other countries, or both.

- OpenSSL®

The following terms are trademarks of the Seagate Technology LLC in the United States, other countries, or both.

- Seagate®
- Seagate Secure®

The following term is a trademark of the Trusted Computing Group in the United States, other countries, or both.

- Trusted Computing Group®

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Legal Notices

This document is provided AS IS with no express or implied warranties. Use the information in this document at your own risk.

This document may be reproduced or distributed in any form without prior permission provided the copyright notice is retained on all copies. Modified versions of this document may be freely distributed provided that they are clearly identified as such, and this copyright is included intact.

Revision History

Version	Date	Author(s)	Description
1.5	2022-10-12	HP Inc.	Public version for evaluation.
1.6	2023-01-27	HP Inc.	In Table 52: CAVP certificates, for the HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module, updated KAS FFC and KAS ECC information to align with CAVP certificate #A2049.

Table of Contents

- 1 Introduction..... 11**
 - 1.1 Security Target Identification..... 11
 - 1.2 TOE Identification 11
 - 1.3 TOE Type..... 11
 - 1.4 TOE Overview 11
 - 1.4.1 Required and Optional Hardware, Software, and Firmware 12
 - 1.4.2 Intended Method of Use 13
 - 1.5 TOE Description 13
 - 1.5.1 TOE Models and Firmware Versions 13
 - 1.5.2 TOE Architecture..... 16
 - 1.5.3 TOE Security Functionality (TSF) Summary 19
 - 1.5.3.1 Auditing 19
 - 1.5.3.2 Data Encryption (a.k.a. cryptography) 19
 - 1.5.3.3 Identification, Authentication, and Authorization to Use HCD Functions 20
 - 1.5.3.4 Access Control 23
 - 1.5.3.5 Image Overwrite 23
 - 1.5.3.6 Trusted Communications 24
 - 1.5.3.7 Administrative Roles..... 24
 - 1.5.3.8 Trusted Operation 24
 - 1.5.3.9 PSTN Fax-network Separation 24
 - 1.5.4 TOE Boundaries 24
 - 1.5.4.1 Physical Boundary 24
 - 1.5.4.2 Logical Boundary..... 25
 - 1.5.4.3 Evaluated Configuration 25
- 2 CC Conformance Claim..... 27**
 - 2.1 Protection Profile Tailoring and Additions 27
 - 2.1.1 Protection Profile for Hardcopy Devices; IPA, NIAP, and the MFP Technical Community ([HCDPP])
27
- 3 Security Problem Definition..... 29**
 - 3.1 Threat Environment 29
 - 3.1.1 Threats Countered by the TOE 29
 - 3.2 Assumptions..... 30
 - 3.2.1 Environment of Use of the TOE 30
 - 3.2.1.1 Physical..... 30
 - 3.2.1.2 Personnel..... 30
 - 3.2.1.3 Connectivity..... 30
 - 3.3 Organizational Security Policies 31
- 4 Security Objectives 32**
 - 4.1 Objectives for the TOE 32
 - 4.2 Objectives for the Operational Environment..... 33
 - 4.3 Security Objectives Rationale 33

4.3.1 Coverage.....33

4.3.2 Sufficiency.....34

5 Extended Components Definition.....37

5.1 Class FAU: Security Audit.....37

5.1.1 Extended: External Audit Trail Storage (FAU_STG).....37

5.1.1.1 FAU_STG_EXT.1 - Extended: Protected Audit Trail Storage37

5.2 Class FCS: Cryptographic Support38

5.2.1 Cryptographic Key Management (FCS_CKM)38

5.2.1.1 FCS_CKM_EXT.4 - Extended: Cryptographic Key Material Destruction.....38

5.2.2 Extended: IPsec selected (FCS_IPSEC)38

5.2.2.1 FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1 – Extended: IPsec selected39

5.2.3 Extended: Cryptographic Operation (Key Chaining) (FCS_KYC)40

5.2.3.1 FCS_KYC_EXT.1 – Extended: Key Chaining40

5.2.4 Extended: Cryptographic Operation (Random Bit Generation) (FCS_RBG)41

5.2.4.1 FCS_RBG_EXT.1 – Extended: Random Bit Generation.....41

5.3 Class FDP: User Data Protection42

5.3.1 Extended: Protection of Data on Disk (FDP_DSK).....42

5.3.1.1 FDP_DSK_EXT.1 – Extended: Protection of Data on Disk42

5.3.2 Extended: Fax Separation (FDP_FXS)43

5.3.2.1 FDP_FXS_EXT.1 – Extended: Fax Separation43

5.4 Class FIA: Identification and Authentication.....43

5.4.1 Extended: Password Management (FIA_PMG).....43

5.4.1.1 FIA_PMG_EXT.1 – Extended: Password Management.....44

5.4.2 Extended: Pre-Shared Key Composition (FIA_PSK)44

5.4.2.1 FIA_PSK_EXT.1 – Extended: Pre-Shared Key Composition45

5.5 Class FPT: Protection of the TSF.....45

5.5.1 Extended: Protection of Key and Key Material (FPT_KYP).....45

5.5.1.1 FPT_KYP_EXT.1 – Extended: Protection of Key and Key Material46

5.5.2 Extended: Protection of TSF Data (FPT_SKP)46

5.5.2.1 FPT_SKP_EXT.1 – Extended: Protection of TSF Data.....46

5.5.3 Extended: TSF Testing (FPT_TST).....47

5.5.3.1 FPT_TST_EXT.1 – Extended: TSF Testing47

5.5.4 Extended: Trusted Update (FPT_TUD).....47

5.5.4.1 FPT_TUD_EXT.1 – Extended: Trusted Update48

6 Security Requirements49

6.1 TOE Security Functional Requirements.....49

6.1.1 Security audit (FAU)52

6.1.1.1 Audit data generation (FAU_GEN.1)52

6.1.1.2 User identity association (FAU_GEN.2)53

6.1.1.3 Extended: Audit Trail Storage (FAU_STG_EXT.1).....53

6.1.2 Cryptographic support (FCS).....53

6.1.2.1 Cryptographic key generation (asymmetric keys) (FCS_CKM.1(a))53

6.1.2.2 Cryptographic key generation (symmetric keys) (FCS_CKM.1(b))54

6.1.2.3 Extended: Cryptographic key material destruction (FCS_CKM_EXT.4).....54

6.1.2.4 Cryptographic key destruction (FCS_CKM.4)54

- 6.1.2.5 Cryptographic Operation (Symmetric encryption/decryption) (FCS_COP.1(a))55
- 6.1.2.6 Cryptographic Operation (for signature generation/verification) (FCS_COP.1(b)).....55
- 6.1.2.7 Cryptographic operation (Hash algorithm) (FCS_COP.1(c))56
- 6.1.2.8 Cryptographic operation (for keyed-hash message authentication) (FCS_COP.1(g))57
- 6.1.2.9 Extended: IPsec selected (FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1).....57
- 6.1.2.10 Extended: Key chaining (FCS_KYC_EXT.1)58
- 6.1.2.11 Extended: Cryptographic Operation (Random Bit Generation) (FCS_RBG_EXT.1)58
- 6.1.3 User data protection (FDP)59
 - 6.1.3.1 Subset access control (FDP_ACC.1)59
 - 6.1.3.2 Security attribute based access control (FDP_ACF.1)59
 - 6.1.3.3 Extended: Protection of Data on Disk (FDP_DSK_EXT.1)64
 - 6.1.3.4 Extended: Fax separation (FDP_FXS_EXT.1)64
 - 6.1.3.5 Subset residual information protection (FDP_RIP.1(a))64
- 6.1.4 Identification and authentication (FIA).....64
 - 6.1.4.1 Authentication failure handling (FIA_AFL.1)64
 - 6.1.4.2 User attribute definition (FIA_ATD.1)64
 - 6.1.4.3 Extended: Password Management (FIA_PMG_EXT.1)65
 - 6.1.4.4 Extended: Pre-shared key composition (FIA_PSK_EXT.1)65
 - 6.1.4.5 Timing of authentication (FIA_UAU.1)66
 - 6.1.4.6 Protected authentication feedback (FIA_UAU.7)67
 - 6.1.4.7 Timing of identification (FIA_UID.1)67
 - 6.1.4.8 User-subject binding (FIA_USB.1).....68
- 6.1.5 Security management (FMT).....69
 - 6.1.5.1 Management of security functions behaviour (FMT_MOF.1).....69
 - 6.1.5.2 Management of security attributes (FMT_MSA.1).....70
 - 6.1.5.3 Static attribute initialisation (FMT_MSA.3).....71
 - 6.1.5.4 Management of TSF data (FMT_MTD.1)71
 - 6.1.5.5 Specification of Management Functions (FMT_SMF.1)72
 - 6.1.5.6 Security roles (FMT_SMR.1)73
- 6.1.6 Protection of the TSF (FPT)73
 - 6.1.6.1 Extended: Protection of Key and Material (FPT_KYP_EXT.1).....73
 - 6.1.6.2 Extended: Protection of TSF data (FPT_SKP_EXT.1).....73
 - 6.1.6.3 Reliable time stamps (FPT_STM.1).....73
 - 6.1.6.4 Extended: TSF testing (FPT_TST_EXT.1).....73
 - 6.1.6.5 Extended: Trusted Update (FPT_TUD_EXT.1)74
- 6.1.7 TOE access (FTA)74
 - 6.1.7.1 TSF-initiated termination (FTA_SSL.3).....74
- 6.1.8 Trusted path/channels (FTP).....74
 - 6.1.8.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel (FTP_ITC.1).....74
 - 6.1.8.2 Trusted path (for Administrators) (FTP_TRP.1(a))75
 - 6.1.8.3 Trusted path (for Non-administrators) (FTP_TRP.1(b)).....75
- 6.2 Security Functional Requirements Rationale75
 - 6.2.1 Coverage75
 - 6.2.2 Sufficiency77
 - 6.2.3 Security requirements dependency analysis83
 - 6.2.4 HCDPP SFR reconciliation86
- 6.3 Security Assurance Requirements87

6.4 Security Assurance Requirements Rationale..... 88

7 TOE Summary Specification 89

7.1 TOE Security Functionality 89

7.1.1 TOE SFR compliance rationale 89

7.1.2 CAVP Certificates 147

8 Abbreviations, Terminology and References 152

8.1 Abbreviations 152

8.2 Terminology 155

8.3 References 156

List of Tables

Table 1: TOE hardware and firmware reference	14
Table 2: TOE English-guidance documentation reference	15
Table 3: TOE OS and processor	15
Table 4: TOE cryptographic implementations.....	20
Table 5: TOE authentication mechanisms and their supported interfaces	20
Table 6: NIAP TDs.....	27
Table 7: Threats countered by the TOE.....	29
Table 8: Physical assumptions.....	30
Table 9: Personnel assumptions.....	30
Table 10: Connectivity assumptions.....	30
Table 11: Organizational security policies	31
Table 12: Security objectives for the TOE	32
Table 13: Security objectives for the operational environment	33
Table 14: Mapping of security objectives to threats and policies	33
Table 15: Mapping of security objectives for the Operational	34
Table 16: Sufficiency of objectives countering threats.....	35
Table 17: Sufficiency of objectives holding assumptions	35
Table 18: Sufficiency of objectives enforcing Organizational Security Policies.....	36
Table 19: Security functional requirements for the TOE.....	49
Table 20: Auditable events	52
Table 21: Asymmetric key generation.....	54
Table 22: Symmetric key generation	54
Table 23: AES encryption/decryption algorithms	55
Table 24: Asymmetric algorithms for signature generation/verification	56
Table 25: Hash algorithms.....	56
Table 26: HMAC algorithms	57
Table 27: DRBG algorithms.....	59
Table 28: D.USER.DOC Access Control SFP.....	59
Table 29: D.USER.JOB Access Control SFP	61
Table 30: Management of functions	69
Table 31: Management of security attributes.....	70
Table 32: Management of TSF Data.....	71
Table 33: Specification of management functions.....	72
Table 34: Mapping of security functional requirements to security objectives	75
Table 35: Security objectives for the TOE rationale.....	77
Table 36: TOE SFR dependency analysis	83
Table 37: HCDPP SFRs excluded from the ST	86
Table 38: Security assurance requirements.....	88
Table 39: TSS index	89
Table 40: TOE SFR compliance rationale	90
Table 41: TOE audit records.....	90
Table 42: Asymmetric key generation.....	98
Table 43: Symmetric key generation	99
Table 44: TOE key destruction.....	100
Table 45: AES algorithms	102

Table 46: Asymmetric algorithms for signature generation/verification103
Table 47: SHS algorithms.....105
IPsec supports HMAC_DRBG with HMAC-SHA2-256 which uses SHA2-256. Table 48: HMAC algorithms107
Table 49: DRBG algorithms113
Table 50: Telecommunications acronyms120
Table 51: IPsec client interfaces127
Table 52: CAVP certificates147

1 Introduction

1.1 Security Target Identification

Title:	HP Color LaserJet MFP E78625/E78630/E78635, HP Color LaserJet Flow E78625/E78630/E78635, HP LaserJet MFP E73130/E73135/E73140, HP LaserJet Flow E73130/E73135/E73140
	Security Target
Version:	1.6
Status:	Final
Date:	2023-01-27
Author:	HP Inc.
Certification Body:	CSEC
Certification ID:	CSEC2022008
Keywords:	Common Criteria, HCD, HCDPP, Hardcopy Device, MFP, LaserJet Managed, E786, E731

1.2 TOE Identification

The TOE is the HP Color LaserJet MFP E78625/E78630/E78635, HP Color LaserJet Flow E78625/E78630/E78635, HP LaserJet MFP E73130/E73135/E73140, and HP LaserJet Flow E73130/E73135/E73140 multifunction printers (MFPs) with HP FutureSmart 5.3.2 Firmware. The complete list of models and firmware versions is provided in Table 1.

1.3 TOE Type

The TOE type is a hardcopy device (HCD) also known as a multifunction printer (MFP).

1.4 TOE Overview

This document is the Common Criteria (CC) Security Target (ST) for the HP products listed in Section 1.2 evaluated as HCDs in compliance with the Protection Profile for Hardcopy Devices Version 1.0, dated September 10, 2015 [HCDPP].

The TOE is an HCD including internal firmware, but exclusive of non-security relevant options such as finishers. The TOE also includes the English-language guidance documentation.

The following firmware modules are included in the TOE.

- System firmware
- Jetdirect Inside firmware

The System firmware controls all functionality except for the network-related functionality. The Jetdirect Inside firmware controls all network-related functionality from Ethernet to Internet Protocol Security (IPsec). These firmware modules are bundled into a single installation bundle.

Several models of HCDs are included in this evaluation. Physically speaking, all models use the same ASIC and processor. All models contain one field-replaceable, nonvolatile storage device. They all have a Control Panel for operating the HCD locally and Ethernet network capability for connecting to a network. They all support the submission of print jobs over the network and remote administration over the network. The main physical differences between models are the number and size of paper feeders, the scan and print speed, the number of output bins, and whether they contain a stapler/stacker. Some models come with an analog fax modem included versus others where the modem is optional.

A complete list of TOE models and firmware versions is provided in [Section 1.5.1](#).

As per [\[HCDPP\] Section 1.5](#), the major security functions in this evaluation are as follows.

- Identification, authentication, and authorization to use HCD functions
- Access control
- Data encryption (a.k.a. cryptography)
- Trusted communications
- Administrative roles
- Auditing
- Trusted operation
- Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) fax-network separation (if PSTN fax function is present)
- Image overwrite

1.4.1 Required and Optional Hardware, Software, and Firmware

The following *required* components are part of the Operational Environment.

- A Domain Name System (DNS) server
- A Network Time Service (NTS) server
- One administrative client computer network connected to the TOE in the role of an Administrative Computer. It must contain a web browser.
- One or both of the following:
 - A Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server
 - A Windows domain controller/Kerberos server
- A Syslog server
- A Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) server

The following *optional* components are part of the Operational Environment.

- Client computers network connected to the TOE in a non-administrative computer role
- HP Print Drivers, including the HP Universal Print Driver, for client computers (for submitting print job requests from client computers)
- Microsoft SharePoint®
- The following remote file systems:

- File Transfer Protocol (FTP)
- Server Message Block (SMB)
- A Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) gateway
- Telephone line connection

1.4.2 Intended Method of Use

This evaluation covers an information processing environment in which a basic level of document security, network security, and security assurance are required.

The TOE is intended to be used in non-hostile, networked environments where TOE users have direct physical access to the HCDs for printing, copying, faxing, scanning, and storing documents. The physical environment should be reasonably controlled and/or monitored where physical tampering of the HCDs would be evident and noticed.

The TOE can be connected to multiple client computers via a local area network using HCD's Jetdirect Inside in the evaluated configuration. The evaluated configuration uses secure network mechanisms for communication between the network computers and the TOE. The TOE is managed by one designated administrative computer. The TOE is not intended to be connected to the Internet.

The following list contains the use cases found in [HCDPP] Section 1.4 "Security Use Cases of the HCD" supported by the TOE.

- Required use cases
 - Printing, scanning, copying
 - Configuration
 - Auditing
 - Verifying software updates
 - Verifying HCD function
- Conditionally mandatory use cases
 - Sending PSTN faxes
 - Receiving PSTN faxes
 - Storing and retrieving documents
 - Field-replaceable nonvolatile storage devices
- Optional use cases
 - Image overwrite

1.5 TOE Description

This section contains a more detailed description of the TOE.

1.5.1 TOE Models and Firmware Versions

Table 1 shows the HCD models included in this evaluation. Also as indicated in Table 1, many models require the installation of the HP Secure Ultimate Performance TAA HDD accessory (HP part #: 6HN31A) prior to deployment. This accessory replaces the field-replaceable nonvolatile storage drive with a field-replaceable, disk-based, self-encrypting drive (SED) that is CC certified.

All TOE models use the same Jetdirect Inside firmware version.

- JOL25030046

The TOE includes the following System firmware versions.

- 2503252_000043
- 2503252_000040

Table 1 includes a mapping of the System firmware versions to the TOE models.

Table 1: TOE hardware and firmware reference

Product model name (Name plate on the front of the HCD)	Product number	Speed licenses	Product model name (Name displayed in the EWS)	Option codes	Qty of part # 6HN31A required	System firmware version
HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E786	5QJ90A	8EP56AAE 8EP57AAE 8LB46AAE 8EP67AAE	HP Color LaserJet MFP E78625/E78630/E78635 (depends on speed license installed)	#201, #202	0	2503252_000043
				All other codes	1	
HP Color LaserJet Managed Flow MFP E786	5QJ94A	8EP56AAE 8EP57AAE 8LB46AAE 8EP67AAE	HP Color LaserJet Flow E78625/E78630/E78635 (depends on speed license installed)	#201, #202	0	
				All other codes	1	
HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E786	5QK18A	8EP56AAE 8EP57AAE 8LB46AAE 8EP67AAE	HP Color LaserJet MFP E78625/E78630/E78635 Or HP Color LaserJet Flow E78625/E78630/E78635 (depends on speed license installed and Flow designation)	All codes	1	
HP LaserJet Managed MFP E731	5QJ98A	8EP58AAE 8EP59AAE 8LB47AAE 8EP68AAE	HP LaserJet MFP E73130/E73135/E73140 (depends on speed license installed)	#201, #202	0	2503252_000040
				All other codes	1	

Product model name (Name plate on the front of the HCD)	Product number	Speed licenses	Product model name (Name displayed in the EWS)	Option codes	Qty of part # 6HN31A required	System firmware version
HP LaserJet Managed Flow MFP E731	5QK02A	8EP58AAE 8EP59AAE 8LB47AAE 8EP68AAE	HP LaserJet Flow E73130/E73135/E73140 (depends on speed license installed)	#201, #202	0	
				All other codes	1	
HP LaserJet Managed MFP E731	5QK19A	8EP58AAE 8EP59AAE 8LB47AAE 8EP68AAE	HP LaserJet MFP E73130/E73135/E73140 Or HP LaserJet Flow E73130/E73135/E73140 (depends on speed license installed and Flow designation)	All codes	1	

Table 2 contains the TOE's English-guidance documentation reference.

Table 2: TOE English-guidance documentation reference

Models	Title	Reference
All models	Common Criteria Evaluated Configuration Guide for HP Multifunction Printers HP Color LaserJet MFP E78625/E78630/E78635, HP Color LaserJet Flow E78625/E78630/E78635, HP LaserJet MFP E73130/E73135/E73140, HP LaserJet Flow E73130/E73135/E73140 Edition 1, 8/2022	[CCECG]

Table 3 shows the operating system and processor used by all TOE models.

Table 3: TOE OS and processor

Item	Type
OS	Linux 4.9.180
Processor	ARM Cortex-A72

1.5.2 TOE Architecture

The TOE is designed to be shared by many client computers and human users. It performs the functions of printing, copying, scanning, faxing, and storing of documents. It can be connected to a local network through the embedded Jetdirect Inside's built-in Ethernet, to an analog telephone line using its internal analog fax modem, or to a USB device using its USB port (but the use of which must be disabled in the evaluated configuration except when the administrator performs trusted update via the USB).

[HCDPP] defines the TOE's physical boundary as the entire HCD product with the possible exclusion of physical options and add-ons that are not security relevant. These exclusions include paper/media trays and feeders, document feeders, output bins, and printer stands.

Operating system and processor

The TOE's operating system is Linux 4.9.180 running on an ARM Cortex-A72 processor.

Networking

The TOE supports Local Area Network (LAN) capabilities. The LAN is used to communicate with client computers, the administrative computer, and several trusted IT entities. Some TOE models include support for Wireless LAN (WLAN), but the WLAN must be disabled in the evaluated configuration.

The TOE protects all network communications with IPsec, which is part of the Jetdirect Inside firmware. It implements Internet Key Exchange version 1 (IKEv1) and supports both pre-shared key (PSK) authentication and X.509v3 certificate-based authentication. The TOE supports both Internet Protocol version 4 (IPv4) and Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6).

Administrative Computer and administrative interfaces

The Administrative Computer connects to the TOE using IPsec. This computer can administer the TOE using the following interfaces over the IPsec connection.

- Embedded Web Server (EWS)
- Representational state transfer (REST) Web Services

EWS

The HTTP-based EWS administrative interface allows administrators to remotely manage the features of the TOE using a web browser. This interface is protected using IPsec.

REST Web Services

The Web Services (WS) interfaces allow administrators to externally manage the TOE. The evaluated configuration only supports the REST Web Services interface. The REST Web Services interface is protected using IPsec.

Administrative Computer and Network Client Computers

For design reasons, only one computer can be used as the Administrative Computer for the TOE in the evaluated configuration. This computer is used for administration of the TOE. All other client computers connecting to the TOE to perform non-administrative tasks are known as Network Client Computers in this ST.

Network Client Computers connect to the TOE to submit print jobs to the TOE using the Printer Job Language (PJL) interface. They can also receive job status from the TOE using PJL. The PJL interface connection is protected using IPsec.

The [CCECG] section *IPsec* describes how to properly configure the TOE to allow a single Administrative Computer and one or more Network Client Computers.

PSTN

Some models of the TOE contain a built-in PSTN connection for sending and receiving faxes. For models of the TOE that don't have built-in analog fax functionality, an optional analog fax accessory can be installed to add analog fax functionality. Some models also support a dual fax modem which contains two analog fax phone lines. The Control Panel uses identification and authentication to control access for sending faxes over PSTN.

PJL

The PJL interface is used by unauthenticated users via Network Client Computers to submit print jobs and receive job status (e.g., view the print queue). The unauthenticated users use PJL over an IPsec connection. It is also used in a non-administrative capacity by the Administrative Computer. The Administrative Computer uses PJL over IPsec to send print jobs to the TOE as well as to receive job status. In general, PJL supports password-protected administrative commands, but in the evaluated configuration, these commands are disabled. For the purposes of this Security Target, we define the PJL interface as PJL data sent to port 9100.

SharePoint, FTP, and SMB

The TOE supports Microsoft SharePoint and remote file systems for the storing of scanned documents. The TOE uses IPsec to protect the communication to SharePoint and to the remote file systems. For remote file system connectivity, the TOE supports the FTP and SMB protocols. (SharePoint is HTTP-based, but IPsec is used to protect the HTTP-based communications.)

SMTP mail server

The TOE can be used to email scanned documents, email received faxes, or email sent faxes. In addition, the TOE can send email alert messages to administrator-specified email addresses, mobile devices, or to a website.

The TOE supports protected communications between itself and Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) gateways. It uses IPsec to protect the communication with the SMTP gateway. The TOE can only protect unencrypted email up to the SMTP gateway. It is the responsibility of the Operational Environment to protect emails from the SMTP gateway to the email's destination. Also, the TOE can only send emails; it does not accept inbound emails.

Audit Server (syslog server)

The TOE supports the auditing of security-relevant functions by generating and forwarding audit records to an external syslog server. It supports both internal and external storage of audit records. The TOE uses IPsec to protect the communications between itself and the syslog server.

DNS, NTS, and WINS servers

The TOE requires a DNS server, an NTS server, and a WINS server in the Operational Environment. The TOE connects to them over an IPsec connection.

Control Panel

Each HCD contains a user interface (UI) called the Control Panel. The Control Panel consists of a touchscreen LCD, a physical home screen button, and a pull-out keyboard (“Flow” models only) as part of the Control Panel. The Control Panel is the physical interface that a user uses to communicate with the TOE when physically using the HCD. The LCD screen displays information such as menus and status to the user. It also provides virtual buttons to the user such as an alphanumeric keypad for entering usernames and passwords. Both administrative and non-administrative users can access the Control Panel.

Internal and External Authentication

Note: The terms Internal Authentication and External Authentication start with a capitalized first character to match the [HCDPP] usage of these terms.

The TOE supports the following Internal Authentication mechanisms in the evaluated configuration.

- Local Device Sign In

The TOE supports the following External Authentication mechanisms in the evaluated configuration.

- LDAP Sign In
- Windows Sign In (i.e., Kerberos)

The TOE's guidance documents and firmware refer to the following mechanisms as sign-in methods: Local Device Sign In, LDAP Sign In, and Windows Sign In. The Local Device Sign In method maintains the account information within the TOE. Only the Device Administrator account, which is an administrative account, is supported through this method in the evaluated configuration. The LDAP Sign In method supports the use of an external LDAP server for authentication. The Windows Sign In method supports the use of an external Windows Domain server for authentication.

Section 1.5.3.3 provides a mapping of authentication mechanisms to TOE interfaces.

Nonvolatile Storage

All TOE models contain one field-replaceable nonvolatile storage device. This storage device is a disk-based self-encrypting drive (SED).

The disk drive contains a section called Job Storage which is a user-visible file system where user document data, such as stored print, stored copy, and stored received faxes, are located.

Firmware Components

The Jetdirect Inside firmware and System firmware components comprise the firmware on the system. Both firmware components work together to provide the security functionality defined in this document for the TOE. They are shown as two separate components but they both share the same operating system. The operating system is part of the System firmware.

The Jetdirect Inside firmware provides the network connectivity and network device drivers used by the System firmware. The Jetdirect Inside firmware includes IPsec and the management functions for managing these network-related features. It also provides the network stack and drivers controlling the TOE's embedded Ethernet interface.

The System firmware controls the overall functions of the TOE from the Control Panel to the storage drive to the print jobs.

1.5.3 TOE Security Functionality (TSF) Summary

1.5.3.1 Auditing

The TOE supports both internal and external storage of audit records. The evaluated configuration requires the use of an external syslog server for external audit record storage. The connection between the TOE and the syslog server is protected using IPsec. No unauthorized access to the audit records is allowed by the TOE.

1.5.3.2 Data Encryption (a.k.a. cryptography)

1.5.3.2.1 IPsec

The TOE's IPsec supports both pre-shared keys (PSKs) and X.509v3 certificates for authentication, the Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP), Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP), Internet Key Exchange version 1 (IKEv1) protocol, and the following cryptographic algorithms: Diffie-Hellman (DH), Elliptic Curve DH (ECDH), Digital Signature Algorithm (DSA), Elliptic Curve DSA (ECDSA), Rivest-Shamir-Adleman (RSA), Advanced Encryption Standard-Cipher Block Chaining (AES-CBC), Advanced Encryption Standard-Electronic Code Book (AES-ECB), Secure Hash Algorithm-based (SHA-based) Hashed Message Authentication Codes (HMACs), Public-Key Cryptography Standards (PKCS) #1 v1.5 signature generation and verification, and counter mode deterministic random bit generator using AES (CTR_DRBG(AES)).

It supports multiple DH groups, transport mode, and uses Main Mode for Phase 1 exchanges in IKEv1. The IKEv1 uses the DH ephemeral (dhEphem) scheme to implement the key agreement scheme finite field cryptography (KAS FFC) algorithm when establishing a protected communication channel. DSA key generation is a prerequisite for KAS FFC when using DH ephemeral. It also uses the ECDH ephemeral unified scheme to implement the key agreement scheme elliptic curve cryptography (KAS ECC) algorithm when establishing a protected communication channel. ECDSA key generation is a prerequisite for KAS ECC when using the ECDH ephemeral unified scheme. The IKEv1 uses imported RSA-based X.509v3 certificates to authenticate the connections. The RSA authentication is accomplished using the IKEv1 digital signature authentication method.

1.5.3.2.2 Drive-lock Password

For secure storage, all TOE models contain one field-replaceable, nonvolatile storage device. This storage device is a disk-based, self-encrypting drive (SED).

The SED in the TOE uses the 256-bit "drive-lock password" as the border encryption value (BEV), which is used to unlock the data on the drive. The BEV is generated by the TOE using a CTR_DRBG(AES-256) algorithm and is stored as a key chain of one in non-field replaceable nonvolatile storage (SPI flash and EEPROM) located inside the TOE. The CTR_DRBG(AES-256) uses the Advanced Encryption Standard-Counter (AES-CTR) algorithm.

1.5.3.2.3 Digital Signatures for Trusted Update

The TOE uses digital signatures based on the RSA 2048-bit algorithm, SHA2-256 algorithm, and PKCS#1 v1.5 to verify the authenticity of the signed update images. The TOE's EWS interface allows an administrator to verify and install the signed update images.

1.5.3.2.4 Digital Signatures for TSF Testing

The TOE uses digital signatures as part of its TSF testing functionality. This is described in [Section 1.5.3.8](#).

1.5.3.2.5 Cryptographic Implementations/Modules

The TOE uses multiple cryptographic implementations to accomplish its cryptographic functions. Table 4 provides the complete list of cryptographic implementations used to satisfy the [HCDPP] cryptographic requirements and maps the cryptographic implementations to the firmware modules.

Table 4: TOE cryptographic implementations

Cryptographic implementation	Usage
HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	Drive-lock password (BEV) generation, TSF Testing, Trusted Update
HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	IKE
HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API	IPsec

The field-replaceable SED also contains a cryptographic implementation within the drive called the "Seagate Secure® TCG Opal SSC Self-Encrypting Drive." This implementation is based on the Trusted Computing Group's (TCG) Opal Security Subsystem Class (SSC) specification. This implementation has been separately CC certified by the SED's manufacturer. The cryptographic algorithms in this implementation are not claimed in this ST.

To prevent confusion with the new SHA3 standard, this ST replaces all occurrences of SHA-256, SHA-384, and SHA-512 with SHA2-256, SHA2-384, and SHA2-512, respectively.

1.5.3.3 Identification, Authentication, and Authorization to Use HCD Functions

Table 5 shows the Internal and External Authentication mechanisms supported by the TOE in the evaluated configuration and maps the mechanisms to the interfaces that use them. The PJJ interface does not appear in this table because the PJJ interface does not perform authentication of users.

The following is a list of terms used in this ST.

Control Panel user

A user of the Control Panel UI.

EWS user

A user of the EWS interface, usually via a web browser.

PJJ user

A user of the PJJ network interface, used for submitting print jobs from a client computer.

REST user

A user of the REST network interface.

Table 5: TOE authentication mechanisms and their supported interfaces

Authentication type	Mechanism name	Supported interfaces
Internal Authentication	Local Device Sign In	Control Panel, EWS, REST

Authentication type	Mechanism name	Supported interfaces
External Authentication	LDAP Sign In	Control Panel, EWS
	Windows Sign In	Control Panel, EWS, REST

1.5.3.3.1 Internal Authentication

1.5.3.3.1.1 Local Device Sign In

The Local Device Sign In method uses an internal user account database to authenticate users. The user accounts contain the following user attributes used for identification and authentication (I&A).

- Display name
- Password

Although this method supports multiple accounts, only the built-in Device Administrator account (U.ADMIN) is to be used with this method in the evaluated configuration. The administrator must not create any Local Device Sign In accounts.

1.5.3.3.2 External Authentication

1.5.3.3.2.1 LDAP Sign In

The LDAP Sign In method supports the use of an LDAP server as an External Authentication mechanism. This method uses the LDAP bind request to authenticate users. The bind request requires the user to provide a username and password that matches a valid user account defined in the LDAP server for the bind request to be successful.

1.5.3.3.2.2 Windows Sign In

The Windows Sign In method supports the user of a Windows Domain server as an External Authentication mechanism. The user must provide a valid Windows Domain username and password to be successfully logged in to the TOE. This method is based on the Kerberos network protocol.

1.5.3.3.3 Control Panel I&A

The HCD has a Control Panel that allows a user to physically walk up to the HCD and select a function (e.g., print, copy, fax) to be performed. The Control Panel supports the following Internal Authentication mechanism.

- Local Device Sign In

Only the Device Administrator account, which is a U.ADMIN account, is available for log in through the Local Device Sign In method in the evaluated configuration. The user must select this account name and then enter the Device Administrator's password in order to gain access. The Device Administrator's account name is generically known as a Display name.

The Control Panel supports the following External Authentication mechanisms.

- LDAP Sign In
- Windows Sign In

Non-administrative users (U.NORMAL) as well as administrators can log in to the HCD through the Control Panel using these External Authentication mechanisms.

The Control Panel allows a handful of actions (e.g., change the language, obtain help, select an authentication mechanism) to be performed prior to identifying and authenticating a user.

The Control Panel uses permission sets (PSs) to determine user roles. The Internal Authentication mechanism has one PS per user. The External Authentication mechanisms have one PS per authentication method, zero or one PS per user, and zero or one PS per network group to which the user belongs. For additional details on the permission sets, see the TOE Summary Specification (TSS) for [FMT_SMR.1](#).

When users sign in through the Control Panel, a user's session permission bits are calculated based on several factors and then bound to the user's session. For additional details on the permission bit calculations, see the TSS for [FIA_USB.1](#).

The Control Panel also supports an administratively configurable inactive session termination timeout.

1.5.3.3.4 Network Interface I&A

The EWS, PJJ, and REST interfaces are network protocols protected by IPsec. The EWS and REST interfaces support one or more authentication mechanisms. These interfaces perform their I&A after the IPsec connection has been established. The PJJ interface is an unauthenticated interface (i.e., it does not perform I&A).

1.5.3.3.4.1 EWS I&A

The EWS interface is an administrative-only interface that supports the following authentication mechanisms.

- Internal Authentication mechanism
 - Local Device Sign In
- External Authentication mechanisms
 - LDAP Sign In
 - Windows Sign In

The EWS interface allows the administrator to select the authentication mechanism (a.k.a. sign-in method) prior to identifying and authenticating the user.

The EWS interface uses PSs to determine user roles. A user logging in to the EWS interface must have administrative privileges in order to successfully log in. The Internal Authentication mechanism has one PS per user. The External Authentication mechanisms have one PS per authentication method, zero or one PS per user, and zero or one PS per network group to which the user belongs. For additional details on the permission sets, see the TSS for [FMT_SMR.1](#).

When users sign in through the EWS interface, a user's session permission bits are calculated based on several factors and then bound to the user's session. For additional details on the permission bit calculations, see the TSS for [FIA_USB.1](#).

The EWS interface also supports an administratively configurable inactive session termination timeout.

1.5.3.3.4.2 REST I&A

The REST interface is an administrative-only interface that supports the following authentication mechanism.

- Internal Authentication mechanism
 - Local Device Sign In
- External Authentication mechanism

- Windows Sign In

The TOE allows the following TSF-mediated actions prior to the REST I&A:

- Discover a subset of the Web Services
- Obtain X.509v3 certificate associated with the print engine
- Obtain configuration settings of the print engine
- Obtain list of installed licenses
- Install a digitally signed license
- Delete a license (if the license in the payload of the request is digitally signed)
- Obtain Web Services registration status
- Obtain printer Claim Code for Web Services registration
- Set printer Claim Code for Web Services registration

1.5.3.3.5 Authentication Failure Handling and Authentication Feedback

The following interfaces support authentication failure handling when using Internal Authentication mechanisms.

- Control Panel
- EWS
- REST

The following user interfaces support protected authentication feedback (i.e., the masking of passwords when being entered during authentication).

- Control Panel
- EWS

1.5.3.4 Access Control

The TOE enforces access control on TSF data and User Data. Each piece of User Data is assigned ownership and access to the data is limited by the access control mechanism. The PSs used to define roles also affect the access control of each user. The access control mechanism for User Data is explained in more detail in the TSS for [FDP_ACF.1](#).

The TOE contains one field-replaceable, nonvolatile storage device. This storage device is a disk-based SED whose cryptographic functions have been CC certified. Together with the drive-lock password, the SED ensures that TSF Data and User Data on the drive is not stored as plaintext.

1.5.3.5 Image Overwrite

The TOE also supports the optional Image Overwrite function ([O.IMAGE_OVERWRITE](#)) defined in [\[HCDPP\]](#). [\[HCDPP\]](#) limits the scope of this function to a field-replaceable nonvolatile storage device.

The TOE refers to the image overwrite feature as "Managing Temporary Job Files." Although the TOE displays three options for image overwrite, in the evaluated configuration the administrator must select one of the following two options, both of which completely overwrite the user document data (i.e., file).

- Secure Fast Erase (overwrite 1 time)
- Secure Sanitize Erase (overwrite 3 times)

1.5.3.6 Trusted Communications

The TOE uses IPsec to protect the communications between the TOE and trusted IT entities as well as between the TOE and client computers. IPsec provides assured identification of the endpoints. It implements IKEv1 and transport mode. The TOE also supports both X.509v3 certificates and pre-shared keys (PSKs) for endpoint authentication. For additional details on the TOE's IPsec features, see the [TSS for FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1](#).

1.5.3.7 Administrative Roles

The TOE supports administrative and non-administrative roles. Assignment to these roles is controlled by the TOE's administrator. In the case of a user authenticated using an External Authentication mechanism (Windows Sign In and LDAP Sign In), the roles are implemented as permission sets. In the case of a user authenticated using an Internal Authentication mechanism (Local Device Sign In), only an administrative account exists.

In addition, the TOE provides security management capabilities for TOE functions, TSF data, and security attributes as defined by this ST.

1.5.3.8 Trusted Operation

TOE updates can be downloaded from the HP Inc. website. These updates are digitally signed by the HCD manufacturer using the RSA 2048-bit algorithm, SHA2-256 algorithm, and PKCS#1 v1.5 signature generation. The TOE's EWS interface allows an administrator to install the update images. When installing an update image, the TOE validates the digital signature of the update image before installing the update image. For additional details, see the [TSS for FPT_TUD_EXT.1](#).

The TOE contains TSF testing functionality referred to as Whitelisting to help ensure only authentic, known-good firmware files that have not been tampered with are loaded into memory. The TOE supports dm-verity to protect the integrity of the SquashFS file system firmware images. On each boot, the TOE verifies the digital signature of the dm-verity hash tree corresponding to a SquashFS file system firmware image. During operation, dm-verity verifies the integrity of a file system block before loading it into memory. The TOE uses digital signatures based on the RSA 2048-bit algorithm, SHA2-256 algorithm, and PKCS#1 v1.5 to verify the integrity of a dm-verity hash tree. For additional details, see the [TSS for FPT_TST_EXT.1](#).

1.5.3.9 PSTN Fax-network Separation

The PSTN fax capability is either included with or can be added to the TOE. In either case, the TOE provides a distinct separation between the fax capabilities and the Ethernet network connection of the TOE prohibiting communication via the fax interface except when transmitting or receiving User Data using fax protocols. This is explained in more detail along with the fax capabilities in the [TSS for FDP_FXS_EXT.1](#).

1.5.4 TOE Boundaries

1.5.4.1 Physical Boundary

The physical boundary of the TOE is the physical boundary of the HCD product. Options and add-ons that are not security relevant, such as finishers, are not part of the evaluation but can be added to the TOE without any security implications.

Optional wireless add-ons are excluded from the TOE and are not part of the evaluation. Built-in wireless capabilities are disabled in the evaluated configuration.

Some TOE models come with built-in PSTN fax capabilities and some TOE models have this as an option. For TOE models where the PSTN fax is an option, the models can be used with or without the PSTN fax option.

The firmware, [CCECG], and other supporting files are packaged in a single ZIP file (i.e., a file in ZIP archive file format). This ZIP file is available for download from the HP Inc. website. The firmware is packaged in this ZIP file as a single firmware bundle file. This firmware bundle contains two firmware modules.

- System firmware
- Jetdirect Inside firmware

The evaluated firmware module versions are provided in [Table 1](#).

As seen in [Table 1](#), there are multiple System firmware versions. Notice the first set of digits in the System firmware versions are all the same, but the second set varies. The first set of digits represents the version of the OS and other code that implement the security functions of the TOE. The second set of digits represents the drivers used to control the physical features—paper trays, document feeders, and output bins—of the TOE. Because different sets of models do not contain the exact same set of physical features, the second set of digits differs.

The consumer receives the hardware independent of the ZIP file. The evaluated hardware models, which are defined in [Table 1](#), are either already on the consumer's premises or must be obtained from HP Inc.

1.5.4.2 Logical Boundary

The security functionality provided by the TOE has been listed at the end of [Section 1.5.3](#).

1.5.4.3 Evaluated Configuration

The following items will need to be adhered to in the evaluated configuration.

- HP Digital Sending Software (DSS) must be disabled.
- Only one Administrative Computer is used to manage the TOE.
- Third-party solutions must not be installed on the TOE.
- PC Fax Send must be disabled.
- Fax polling receive must be disabled.
- Device USB must be disabled.
- Host USB plug and play must be disabled.
- Firmware upgrades through any means other than the EWS (e.g., PJJ) and USB must be disabled.
- All non-fax stored jobs must be assigned a Job PIN or Job Encryption Password.
- HP Jetdirect XML Services must be disabled.
- External file system access through PJJ and PS must be disabled.
- Only X.509v3 certificates and pre-shared key are supported methods for IPsec authentication (IPsec authentication using Kerberos is not supported).
- IPsec Authentication Headers (AH) must be disabled.
- Control Panel Mandatory Sign-in must be enabled (this disables the Guest role).
- SNMP must be disabled.
- The Service PIN, used by a customer support engineer to access functions available to support personnel, must be disabled.

- Wireless functionality must be disabled:
 - Near Field Communication (NFC) must be disabled.
 - Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) must be disabled.
 - Wireless Direct Print must be disabled.
 - Wireless station must be disabled.
- PJJL device access commands must be disabled.
- When using Windows Sign In, the Windows domain must reject Microsoft NT LAN Manager (NTLM) connections.
- Remote Control-Panel use is disallowed.
- Local Device Sign In accounts must not be created (i.e., only the built-in Device Administrator account is allowed as a Local Device Sign In account).
- Access must be blocked to the following Web Services (WS) using IPsec:
 - Open Extensibility Platform device (OXPD) Web Services
 - WS* Web Services
- Device Administrator Password must be set.
- Remote Configuration Password must not be set.
- OAUTH2 use is disallowed.
- SNMP over HTTP use is disallowed.
- HP Workpath Platform must be disabled.
- Licenses must not be installed to enable features beyond what is supported in the evaluated configuration.
- All received faxes must be converted into stored faxes.
- Fax Archive must be disabled.
- Fax Forwarding must be disabled.
- Internet Fax and LAN Fax must be disabled.
- Firmware updates through REST Web Services is disallowed.
- Scan+ must be disabled.
- Remote User Auto Capture must be disabled.
- PS privileged operators must be disabled.
- Cancel print jobs after unattended error must be enabled.
- Smart Cloud Print must be disabled.

2 CC Conformance Claim

This Security Target is CC Part 2 extended and CC Part 3 conformant.

This Security Target claims conformance to the following Protection Profiles and PP packages:

- [HCDPP]: Protection Profile for Hardcopy Devices; IPA, NIAP, and the MFP Technical Community. Version 1.0 as of 2015-09-10; exact conformance.
- [HCDPP-ERRATA]: Protection Profile for Hardcopy Devices - v1.0, Errata #1, June 2017. Version 1.0 as of 2017-06; exact conformance.

Common Criteria [CC] version 3.1 revision 5 is the basis for this conformance claim.

2.1 Protection Profile Tailoring and Additions

2.1.1 Protection Profile for Hardcopy Devices; IPA, NIAP, and the MFP Technical Community ([HCDPP])

Table 6 contains the NIAP Technical Decisions (TDs) for this protection profile at the time of the evaluation and a statement of applicability to the evaluation.

Table 6: NIAP TDs

NIAP TD	TD description	Applicability	TD reference
TD0157	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.1 - Testing SPDs	Applicable. The TOE includes IPsec.	[CCEVS-TD0157]
TD0176	FDP_DSK_EXT.1.2 - SED Testing	Applicable. The TOE includes a field-replaceable SED.	[CCEVS-TD0176]
TD0219	NIAP Endorsement of Errata for HCD PP v1.0	Applicable.	[CCEVS-TD0219]
TD0253	Assurance Activities for Key Transport	Not applicable. FCS_COP.1(i) is not claimed.	[CCEVS-TD0253]
TD0261	Destruction of CSPs in flash	Applicable. The TOE stores one or more keys in flash memory.	[CCEVS-TD0261]
TD0299	Update to FCS_CKM.4 Assurance Activities	Not applicable. The "a new value of a key of the same size" is not selected in FCS_CKM.4.	[CCEVS-TD0299]
TD0393	Require FTP_TRP.1(b) only for printing	Not applicable. The TOE supports a remote, non-administrative interface for submitting print jobs to the TOE. FTP_TRP.1(b) is claimed.	[CCEVS-TD0393]
TD0474	Removal of Mandatory Cipher Suite in FCS_TLS_EXT.1	Not applicable. FCS_TLS_EXT.1 is not claimed.	[CCEVS-TD0474]

NIAP TD	TD description	Applicability	TD reference
TD0494	Removal of Mandatory SSH Ciphersuite for HCD	Not applicable. FCS_SSH_EXT.1.7 is not claimed.	[CCEVS-TD0494]
TD0562	Test activity for Public Key Algorithms	Not applicable. FCS_SSH_EXT.1.5 is not claimed.	[CCEVS-TD0562]
TD0642	FCS_CKM.1.1(a) and FCS_COP.1.1(b) Requirements in HCD PP v1.0	Applicable.	[CCEVS-TD0642]

3 Security Problem Definition

3.1 Threat Environment

The Security Problem Definition (SPD) is delivered into two parts. This first part describes Assets, Threats, and Organizational Security Policies, in narrative form. [Brackets] indicate a reference to the second part, formal definitions of Users, Assets, Threats, Organizational Security Policies, and Assumptions, which appear in Appendix A of [HCDPP].

Users

A conforming TOE must define at least the following two User roles:

1. Normal Users [U.NORMAL] who are identified and authenticated and do not have an administrative role.
2. Administrators [U.ADMIN] who are identified and authenticated and have an administrative role.

A conforming TOE may allow additional roles, sub-roles, or groups. In particular, a conforming TOE may allow several administrative roles that have authority to administer different aspects of the TOE.

Assets

For a User's perspective, the primary Asset to be protected in a TOE is User Document Data [D.USER.DOC]. A User's job instructions, User Job Data [D.USER.JOB] (information related to a User's Document or Document Processing Job), may also be protected if their compromise impacts the protection of User Document Data. Together, User Document Data and User Job Data are considered to be User Data.

From an Administrator's perspective, the primary Asset to be protected in a TOE is data that is used to configure and monitor the secure operation of the TOE. This kind of data is considered to be TOE Security Functionality (TSF) Data.

There are two broad categories for this kind of data:

1. Protected TSF Data, which may be read by any User but must be protected from unauthorized modification and deletion [D.TSF.PROT]; and,
2. Confidential TSF Data, which may neither be read nor modified or deleted except by authorized Users [D.TSF.CONF].

3.1.1 Threats Countered by the TOE

Table 7: Threats countered by the TOE

Threat	Description
T.UNAUTHORIZED_ACCESS	An attacker may access (read, modify, or delete) User Document Data or change (modify or delete) User Job Data in the TOE through one of the TOE's interfaces.
T.TSF_COMPROMISE	An attacker may gain Unauthorized Access to TSF Data in the TOE through one of the TOE's interfaces.

Threat	Description
T.TSF_FAILURE	A malfunction of the TSF may cause loss of security if the TOE is permitted to operate.
T.UNAUTHORIZED_UPDATE	An attacker may cause the installation of unauthorized software on the TOE.
T.NET_COMPROMISE	An attacker may access data in transit or otherwise compromise the security of the TOE by monitoring or manipulating network communication.

3.2 Assumptions

3.2.1 Environment of Use of the TOE

3.2.1.1 Physical

Table 8: Physical assumptions

Assumption	Description
A.PHYSICAL	Physical security, commensurate with the value of the TOE and the data it stores or processes, is assumed to be provided by the environment.

3.2.1.2 Personnel

Table 9: Personnel assumptions

Assumption	Description
A.TRUSTED_ADMIN	TOE Administrators are trusted to administer the TOE according to site security policies.
A.TRAINED_USERS	Authorized Users are trained to use the TOE according to site security policies.

3.2.1.3 Connectivity

Table 10: Connectivity assumptions

Assumption	Description
A.NETWORK	The Operational Environment is assumed to protect the TOE from direct, public access to its LAN interface.

3.3 Organizational Security Policies

Table 11: Organizational security policies

Organizational security policy	Description
P.AUTHORIZATION	Users must be authorized before performing Document Processing and administrative functions.
P.AUDIT	Security-relevant activities must be audited and the log of such actions must be protected and transmitted to an External IT Entity.
P.COMMS_PROTECTION	The TOE must be able to identify itself to other devices on the LAN.
P.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION	If the TOE stores User Document Data or Confidential TSF Data on Field-Replaceable Nonvolatile Storage Devices, it will encrypt such data on those devices.
P.KEY_MATERIAL	Cleartext keys, submasks, random numbers, or any other values that contribute to the creation of encryption keys for Field-Replaceable Nonvolatile Storage of User Document Data or Confidential TSF Data must be protected from unauthorized access and must not be stored on that storage device.
P.FAX_FLOW	If the TOE provides a PSTN fax function, it will ensure separation between the PSTN fax line and the LAN.
P.IMAGE_OVERWRITE	Upon completion or cancellation of a Document Processing job, the TOE shall overwrite residual image data from its Field-Replaceable Nonvolatile Storage Device.

4 Security Objectives

4.1 Objectives for the TOE

Table 12: Security objectives for the TOE

Security objective	Description
O.USER_I&A	The TOE shall perform identification and authentication of Users for operations that require access control, User authorization, or Administrator roles.
O.ACCESS_CONTROL	The TOE shall enforce access controls to protect User Data and TSF Data in accordance with security policies.
O.USER_AUTHORIZATION	The TOE shall perform authorization of Users in accordance with security policies.
O.ADMIN_ROLES	The TOE shall ensure that only authorized Administrators are permitted to perform administrator functions.
O.UPDATE_VERIFICATION	The TOE shall provide mechanisms to verify the authenticity of software updates.
O.TSF_SELF_TEST	The TOE shall test some subset of its security functionality to help ensure that subset is operating properly.
O.COMMS_PROTECTION	The TOE shall have the capability to protect LAN communications of User Data and TSF Data from Unauthorized Access, replay, and source/destination spoofing.
O.AUDIT	The TOE shall generate audit data, and be capable of sending it to a trusted External IT Entity. Optionally, it may store audit data in the TOE.
O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION	If the TOE stores User Document Data or Confidential TSF Data in Field-Replaceable Nonvolatile Storage devices, then the TOE shall encrypt such data on those devices.
O.KEY_MATERIAL	The TOE shall protect from unauthorized access any cleartext keys, submasks, random numbers, or other values that contribute to the creation of encryption keys for storage of User Document Data or Confidential TSF Data in Field-Replaceable Nonvolatile Storage Devices; The TOE shall ensure that such key material is not stored in cleartext on the storage device that uses that material.
O.FAX_NET_SEPARATION	If the TOE provides a PSTN fax function, then the TOE shall ensure separation of the PSTN fax telephone line and the LAN, by system design or active security function.

Security objective	Description
O.IMAGE_OVERWRITE	Upon completion or cancellation of a Document Processing job, the TOE shall overwrite residual image data from its Field-Replaceable Nonvolatile Storage Devices.

4.2 Objectives for the Operational Environment

Table 13: Security objectives for the operational environment

Security objective	Description
OE.PHYSICAL_PROTECTION	The Operational Environment shall provide physical security, commensurate with the value of the TOE and the data it stores or processes.
OE.NETWORK_PROTECTION	The Operational Environment shall provide network security to protect the TOE from direct, public access to its LAN interface.
OE.ADMIN_TRUST	The TOE Owner shall establish trust that Administrators will not use their privileges for malicious purposes.
OE.USER_TRAINING	The TOE Owner shall ensure that Users are aware of site security policies and have the competence to follow them.
OE.ADMIN_TRAINING	The TOE Owner shall ensure that Administrators are aware of site security policies and have the competence to use manufacturer’s guidance to correctly configure the TOE and protect passwords and keys accordingly.

4.3 Security Objectives Rationale

4.3.1 Coverage

The following table provides a mapping of TOE objectives to threats and policies, showing that each objective counters or enforces at least one threat or policy, respectively.

Table 14: Mapping of security objectives to threats and policies

Objective	Threats/OSPs
O.USER_I&A	T.UNAUTHORIZED_ACCESS T.TSF_COMPROMISE P.AUTHORIZATION
O.ACCESS_CONTROL	T.UNAUTHORIZED_ACCESS T.TSF_COMPROMISE P.AUDIT
O.USER_AUTHORIZATION	P.AUTHORIZATION P.AUDIT

Objective	Threats/OSPs
O.ADMIN_ROLES	T.UNAUTHORIZED_ACCESS T.TSF_COMPROMISE P.AUTHORIZATION
O.UPDATE_VERIFICATION	T.UNAUTHORIZED_UPDATE
O.TSF_SELF_TEST	T.TSF_FAILURE
O.COMMS_PROTECTION	T.NET_COMPROMISE P.COMMS_PROTECTION
O.AUDIT	P.AUDIT
O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION	P.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION
O.KEY_MATERIAL	P.KEY_MATERIAL
O.FAX_NET_SEPARATION	P.FAX_FLOW
O.IMAGE_OVERWRITE	P.IMAGE_OVERWRITE

The following table provides a mapping of the objectives for the Operational Environment to assumptions, threats and policies, showing that each objective holds, counters or enforces at least one assumption, threat or policy, respectively.

Table 15: Mapping of security objectives for the Operational Environment to assumptions, threats and policies

Objective	Assumptions/Threats/OSPs
OE.PHYSICAL_PROTECTION	A.PHYSICAL
OE.NETWORK_PROTECTION	A.NETWORK
OE.ADMIN_TRUST	A.TRUSTED_ADMIN
OE.USER_TRAINING	A.TRAINED_USERS
OE.ADMIN_TRAINING	A.TRAINED_USERS

4.3.2 Sufficiency

The following rationale provides justification that the security objectives are suitable to counter each individual threat and that each security objective tracing back to a threat, when achieved, actually contributes to the removal, diminishing or mitigation of that threat.

Table 16: Sufficiency of objectives countering threats

Threat	Rationale for security objectives
T.UNAUTHORIZED_ACCESS	O.ACCESS_CONTROL restricts access to User Data in the TOE to authorized Users. O.USER_I&A provides the basis for access control. O.ADMIN_ROLES restricts the ability to authorize Users and set access controls to authorized Administrators.
T.TSF_COMPROMISE	O.ACCESS_CONTROL restricts access to User Data in the TOE to authorized Users. O.USER_I&A provides the basis for access control. O.ADMIN_ROLES restricts the ability to authorize Users and set access controls to authorized Administrators.
T.TSF_FAILURE	O.TSF_SELF_TEST prevents the TOE from operating if a malfunction is detected.
T.UNAUTHORIZED_UPDATE	O.UPDATE_VERIFICATION verifies the authenticity of software updates.
T.NET_COMPROMISE	O.COMMS_PROTECTION protects LAN communications from sniffing, replay, and man-in-the-middle attacks.

The following rationale provides justification that the security objectives for the environment are suitable to cover each individual assumption, that each security objective for the environment that traces back to an assumption about the environment of use of the TOE, when achieved, actually contributes to the environment achieving consistency with the assumption, and that if all security objectives for the environment that trace back to an assumption are achieved, the intended usage is supported.

Table 17: Sufficiency of objectives holding assumptions

Assumption	Rationale for security objectives
A.PHYSICAL	OE.PHYSICAL_PROTECTION establishes a protected physical environment for the TOE.
A.TRUSTED_ADMIN	OE.ADMIN_TRUST establishes responsibility of the TOE Owner to have a trusted relationship with Administrators.
A.TRAINED_USERS	OE.ADMIN_TRAINING establishes responsibility of the TOE Owner to provide appropriate training for Administrators. OE.USER_TRAINING establishes responsibility of the TOE Owner to provide appropriate training for Users.
A.NETWORK	OE.NETWORK_PROTECTION establishes a protected LAN environment for the TOE.

The following rationale provides justification that the security objectives are suitable to cover each individual organizational security policy (OSP), that each security objective that traces back to an OSP, when achieved,

actually contributes to the implementation of the OSP, and that if all security objectives that trace back to an OSP are achieved, the OSP is implemented.

Table 18: Sufficiency of objectives enforcing Organizational Security Policies

OSP	Rationale for security objectives
P.AUTHORIZATION	<p>O.USER_AUTHORIZATION restricts the ability to perform Document Processing and administrative functions to authorized Users.</p> <p>O.USER_I&A provides the basis for authorization.</p> <p>O.ADMIN_ROLES restricts the ability to authorize Users to authorized Administrators.</p>
P.AUDIT	<p>O.AUDIT requires the generation of audit data.</p> <p>O.ACCESS_CONTROL restricts access to audit data in the TOE to authorized Users.</p> <p>O.USER_AUTHORIZATION provides the basis for authorization.</p>
P.COMMS_PROTECTION	<p>O.COMMS_PROTECTION protects LAN communications from man-in-the-middle attacks.</p>
P.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION	<p>O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION protects User Document Data and Confidential TSF Data stored in Field-Replaceable Nonvolatile Storage Devices from exposure if a device has been removed from the TOE and its Operational Environment.</p>
P.KEY_MATERIAL	<p>O.KEY_MATERIAL protects keys and key materials from unauthorized access and ensures that they any key materials are not stored in cleartext on the device that uses those materials for its own encryption.</p>
P.FAX_FLOW	<p>O.FAX_NET_SEPARATION requires a separation between the PSTN fax line and the LAN.</p>
P.IMAGE_OVERWRITE	<p>O.IMAGE_OVERWRITE overwrites residual image data from Field-Replaceable Nonvolatile Storage Devices after Document Processing jobs are completed or cancelled.</p>

5 Extended Components Definition

All the extended components definitions in this section are from [HCDPP]. Only the [HCDPP] extended components definitions used by this ST are listed in this section.

5.1 Class FAU: Security Audit

5.1.1 Extended: External Audit Trail Storage (FAU_STG)

Family behaviour

This family defines requirements for the TSF to ensure that secure transmission of audit data from TOE to an External IT Entity.

Component levelling

FAU_STG_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall be able to transmit the generated audit data to an External IT Entity using a trusted channel according to FTP_ITC.1.

Management: FAU_STG_EXT.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) The TSF shall have the ability to configure the cryptographic functionality.

Audit: FAU_STG_EXT.1

There are no audit events foreseen.

5.1.1.1 FAU_STG_EXT.1 - Extended: Protected Audit Trail Storage

Hierarchical to: No other components

Dependencies: FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation
FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel

FAU_STG_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall be able to transmit the generated audit data to an External IT Entity using a trusted channel according to FTP_ITC.1.

Rationale The TSF is required that the transmission of generated audit data to an External IT Entity which relies on a non-TOE audit server for storage and review of audit records. The storage of these audit records and the ability to allow the administrator to review these audit records is provided by the Operational Environment in that case. The Common Criteria does not provide a suitable SFR for the transmission of audit data to an External IT Entity.

This extended component protects the audit records, and it is therefore placed in the FAU class with a single component.

5.2 Class FCS: Cryptographic Support

5.2.1 Cryptographic Key Management (FCS_CKM)

Management: FCS_CKM_EXT.4

There are no management activities foreseen.

Audit: FCS_CKM_EXT.4

There are no audit events foreseen.

5.2.1.1 FCS_CKM_EXT.4 - Extended: Cryptographic Key Material Destruction

Hierarchical to: No other components

Dependencies: FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation
FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction

FCS_CKM_EXT.4.1 The TSF shall destroy all plaintext secret and private cryptographic keys and cryptographic critical security parameters when no longer needed.

Rationale Cryptographic Key Material Destruction is to ensure the keys and key materials that are no longer needed are destroyed by using an approved method, and the Common Criteria does not provide a suitable SFR for the Cryptographic Key Material Destruction.

This extended component protects the cryptographic key and key materials against exposure, and it is therefore placed in the FCS class with a single component.

5.2.2 Extended: IPsec selected (FCS_IPSEC)

Family behaviour

This family addresses requirements for protecting communications using IPsec.

Component levelling

FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1 IPsec requires that IPsec be implemented as specified.

Management: FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

Audit: FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Failure to establish an IPsec SA.

5.2.2.1 FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1 – Extended: IPsec selected

Hierarchical to: No other components

Dependencies: FIA_PSK_EXT.1 Extended: Pre-Shared Key Composition
 FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation
 FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation
 FCS_RBG_EXT.1 Extended: Random Bit Generation

FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall implement the IPsec architecture as specified in RFC 4301.

FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.2 The TSF shall implement [selection: tunnel mode, transport mode].

FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.3 The TSF shall have a nominal, final entry in the SPD that matches anything that is otherwise unmatched, and discards it.

FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.4 The TSF shall implement the IPsec protocol ESP as defined by RFC 4303 using [selection: **the cryptographic algorithms AES-CBC-128 (as specified by RFC 3602) together with a Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA)-based HMAC, AES-CBC-256 (as specified by RFC 3602) together with a Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA)-based HMAC, AES-GCM-128 as specified in RFC 4106, AES-GCM-256 as specified in RFC 4106**].

FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.5 The TSF shall implement the protocol: [selection: **IKEv1, using Main Mode for Phase 1 exchanges, as defined in RFCs 2407, 2408, 2409, RFC 4109, [selection: no other RFCs for extended sequence numbers, RFC 4304 for extended sequence numbers] and [selection: no other RFCs for hash functions, RFC 4868 for hash functions], IKEv2 as defined in RFCs 5996 [selection: with no support for NAT traversal, with mandatory support for NAT traversal as specified in section 2.23] and [selection: no other RFCs for hash functions, RFC 4868 for hash functions]**].

FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.6 The TSF shall ensure the encrypted payload in the [selection: **IKEv1, IKEv2**] protocol uses the cryptographic algorithms AES-CBC-128, Protection Profile for Hardcopy Devices – v1.0 September 10, 2015 Page 112 AES-CBC-256 as specified in RFC 3602 and [selection: **AES-GCM-128, AES-GCM-256 as specified in RFC 5282, no other algorithm**].

FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.7 The TSF shall ensure that IKEv1 Phase 1 exchanges use only main mode.

FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.8 The TSF shall ensure that [selection: **IKEv2 SA lifetimes can be established based on [selection: number of packets/number of bytes, length of time, where the time values can be limited to: 24 hours for Phase 1 SAs and 8 hours for Phase 2 SAs], IKEv1 SA lifetimes can be established based on [selection: number of packets/number of bytes, length of time, where the time values can be limited to: 24 hours for Phase 1 SAs and 8 hours for Phase 2 SAs]**].

FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.9 The TSF shall ensure that all IKE protocols implement DH Groups 14 (2048-bit MODP), and [selection: **24 (2048-bit MODP with 256-bit POS), 19 (256-bit Random ECP), 20**].

(384-bit Random ECP, 5 (1536-bit MODP)), [assignment: other DH groups that are implemented by the TOE], no other DH groups].

FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.10 The TSF shall ensure that all IKE protocols perform Peer Authentication using the [selection: **RSA, ECDSA**] algorithm and Pre-shared Keys

Rationale IPsec is one of the secure communication protocols, and the Common Criteria does not provide a suitable SFR for the communication protocols using cryptographic algorithms. This extended component protects the communication data using cryptographic algorithms, and it is therefore placed in the FCS class with a single component.

5.2.3 Extended: Cryptographic Operation (Key Chaining) (FCS_KYC)

Family behaviour

This family provides the specification to be used for using multiple layers of encryption keys to ultimately secure the protected data encrypted on the storage.

Component levelling

FCS_KYC_EXT Key Chaining, requires the TSF to maintain a key chain and specifies the characteristics of that chain.

Management: FCS_KYC_EXT.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

Audit: FCS_KYC_EXT.1

There are no audit events foreseen.

5.2.3.1 FCS_KYC_EXT.1 – Extended: Key Chaining

Hierarchical to: No other components

Dependencies: [FCS_COP.1(E) No description found, or FCS_KDF_EXT.1 Extended: Cryptographic Key Derivation, or FCS_SMC_EXT.1 No description found]

FCS_KYC_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall maintain a key chain of: [selection: **one, using a submask as the BEV or DEK, intermediate keys originating from one or more submask(s) to the BEV or DEK using the following method(s): [selection: key transport as specified in FCS_COP.1(i)]**] while maintaining an effective strength of [selection: **128 bits, 256 bits**].

Rationale Key Chaining ensures that the TSF maintains the key chain, and also specifies the characteristics of that chain. However, the Common Criteria does not provide a suitable SFR for the management of multiple layers of encryption key to protect encrypted data.

This extended component protects the TSF data using cryptographic algorithms, and it is therefore placed in the FCS class with a single component.

5.2.4 Extended: Cryptographic Operation (Random Bit Generation) (FCS_RBG)

Family behaviour

This family defines requirements for random bit generation to ensure that it is performed in accordance with selected standards and seeded by an entropy source.

Component levelling

FCS_RBG_EXT.1 Random Bit Generation requires random bit generation to be performed in accordance with selected standards and seeded by an entropy source.

Management: FCS_RBG_EXT.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

Audit: FCS_RBG_EXT.1

There are no audit events foreseen.

5.2.4.1 FCS_RBG_EXT.1 – Extended: Random Bit Generation

Hierarchical to: No other components

Dependencies: No dependencies

FCS_RBG_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall perform all deterministic random bit generation services in accordance with [selection: **ISO/IEC 18031:2011, NIST SP 800-90A**] using [selection: **Hash_DRBG (any), HMAC_DRBG (any), CTR_DRBG (AES)**].

FCS_RBG_EXT.1.2 The deterministic RBG shall be seeded by an entropy source that accumulates entropy from [selection: **[assignment: number of software-based sources] software-based noise source(s), [assignment: number of hardware-based sources] hardware-based noise source(s)**] with a minimum of [selection: **128 bits, 256 bits**] of entropy at least equal to the greatest security strength, according to ISO/IEC 18031:2011 Table C.1 "Security strength table for hash functions", of the keys and hashes that it will generate.

Rationale Random bits/number will be used by the SFRs for key generation and destruction, and the Common Criteria does not provide a suitable SFR for the random bit generation.

This extended component ensures the strength of encryption keys, and it is therefore placed in the FCS class with a single component.

5.3 Class FDP: User Data Protection

5.3.1 Extended: Protection of Data on Disk (FDP_DSK)

Family behaviour

This family is to mandate the encryption of all protected data written to the storage.

Component levelling

FDP_DSK_EXT.1 Extended: Protection of Data on Disk, requires the TSF to encrypt all the Confidential TSF and User Data stored on the Field-Replaceable Nonvolatile Storage Devices in order to avoid storing these data in plaintext on the devices.

Management: FDP_DSK_EXT.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

Audit: FDP_DSK_EXT.1

There are no audit events foreseen.

5.3.1.1 FDP_DSK_EXT.1 – Extended: Protection of Data on Disk

Hierarchical to: No other components

Dependencies: FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation

FDP_DSK_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall be [selection: **perform encryption in accordance with FCS_COP.1(d), use a self-encrypting Field-Replaceable Nonvolatile Storage Device that is separately CC certified to conform to the FDE EE cPP**] such that any Field-Replaceable Nonvolatile Storage Device contains no plaintext User Document Data and no plaintext confidential TSF Data.

FDP_DSK_EXT.1.2 The TSF shall encrypt all protected data without user intervention.

Rationale Extended: Protection of Data on Disk is to specify that encryption of any confidential data without user intervention, and the Common Criteria does not provide a suitable SFR for the Protection of Data on Disk.

This extended component protects the Data on Disk, and it is therefore placed in the FDP class with a single component.

5.3.2 Extended: Fax Separation (FDP_FXS)

Family behaviour

This family addresses the requirements for separation between Fax PSTN line and the LAN to which TOE is connected.

Component levelling

FDP_FXS_EXT.1 Fax Separation, requires the fax interface cannot be used to create a network bridge between a PSTN and a LAN to which TOE is connected.

Management: FDP_FXS_EXT.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

Audit: FDP_FXS_EXT.1

There are no audit events foreseen.

5.3.2.1 FDP_FXS_EXT.1 – Extended: Fax Separation

Hierarchical to: No other components

Dependencies: No dependencies

FDP_FXS_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall prohibit communication via the fax interface, except transmitting or receiving User Data using fax protocols.

FDP_FXS_EXT.1.2 The TSF shall encrypt all protected data without user intervention.

Rationale Fax Separation is to protect a LAN against attack from PSTN line, and the Common Criteria does not provide a suitable SFR for the Protection of TSF or User Data.
This extended component protects the TSF Data or User Data, and it is therefore placed in the FDP class with a single component.

5.4 Class FIA: Identification and Authentication

5.4.1 Extended: Password Management (FIA_PMG)

Family behaviour

This family defines requirements for the attributes of passwords used by administrative users to ensure that strong passwords and passphrases can be chosen and maintained.

Component levelling

FIA_PMG_EXT.1 Password management requires the TSF to support passwords with varying composition requirements, minimum lengths, maximum lifetime, and similarity constraints.

Management: FIA_PMG_EXT.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

Audit: FIA_PMG_EXT.1

There are no audit events foreseen.

5.4.1.1 FIA_PMG_EXT.1 – Extended: Password Management

Hierarchical to: No other components

Dependencies: No dependencies

FIA_PMG_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall provide the following password management capabilities for User passwords:

- Passwords shall be able to be composed of any combination of upper and lower case letters, numbers, and the following special characters [selection: "!", "@", "#", "\$", "%", "^", "&", "*", "(", ")"]
- Minimum password length shall be settable by an Administrator, and have the capability to require passwords of 15 characters or greater.

Rationale Password Management is to ensure the strong authentication between the endpoints of communication, and the Common Criteria does not provide a suitable SFR for the Password Management.

This extended component protects the TOE by means of password management, and it is therefore placed in the FIA class with a single component.

5.4.2 Extended: Pre-Shared Key Composition (FIA_PSK)

Family behaviour

This family defines requirements for the TSF to ensure the ability to use pre-shared keys for IPsec.

Component levelling

FIA_PSK_EXT.1 Pre-Shared Key Composition, ensures authenticity and access control for updates.

Management: FIA_PSK_EXT.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

Audit: FIA_PSK_EXT.1

There are no audit events foreseen.

5.4.2.1 FIA_PSK_EXT.1 – Extended: Pre-Shared Key Composition

Hierarchical to: No other components

Dependencies: FCS_RBG_EXT.1 Extended: Random Bit Generation

FIA_PSK_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall be able to use pre-shared keys for IPsec.

FIA_PSK_EXT.1.2 The TSF shall be able to accept text-based pre-shared keys that are:

- 22 characters in length and [selection: [**assignment: other supported lengths**], **no other lengths**]
- composed of any combination of upper and lower case letters, numbers, and special characters (that include: "!", "@", "#", "\$", "%", "^", "&", "*", "(", and ")").

FIA_PSK_EXT.1.3 The TSF shall condition the text-based pre-shared keys by using [selection: **SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-512**, [assignment: **method of conditioning text string**]] and be able to [selection: **use no other pre-shared keys, accept bit-based pre-shared keys, generate bit-based pre-shared keys using the random bit generator specified in FCS_RBG_EXT.1**].

Rationale Pre-shared Key Composition is to ensure the strong authentication between the endpoints of communications, and the Common Criteria does not provide a suitable SFR for the Pre-shared Key Composition.

This extended component protects the TOE by means of strong authentication, and it is therefore placed in the FIA class with a single component.

5.5 Class FPT: Protection of the TSF

5.5.1 Extended: Protection of Key and Key Material (FPT_KYP)

Family behaviour

This family addresses the requirements for keys and key materials to be protected if and when written to nonvolatile storage.

Component levelling

FPT_KYP_EXT.1 Extended: Protection of key and key material, requires the TSF to ensure that no plaintext key or key materials are written to nonvolatile storage.

Management: FPT_KYP_EXT.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

Audit: FPT_KYP_EXT.1

There are no audit events foreseen.

5.5.1.1 FPT_KYP_EXT.1 – Extended: Protection of Key and Key Material

Hierarchical to: No other components

Dependencies: No dependencies

FPT_KYP_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall not store plaintext keys that are part of the keychain specified by FCS_KYC_EXT.1 in any Field-Replaceable Nonvolatile Storage Device, and not store any such plaintext key on a device that uses the key for its encryption.

Rationale Protection of Key and Key Material is to ensure that no plaintext key or key material are written to nonvolatile storage, and the Common Criteria does not provide a suitable SFR for the protection of key and key material.

This extended component protects the TSF data, and it is therefore placed in the FPT class with a single component.

5.5.2 Extended: Protection of TSF Data (FPT_SKP)

Family behaviour

This family addresses the requirements for managing and protecting the TSF data, such as cryptographic keys. This is a new family modelled as the FPT Class.

Component levelling

FPT_SKP_EXT.1 Protection of TSF Data (for reading all symmetric keys), requires preventing symmetric keys from being read by any user or subject. It is the only component of this family.

Management: FPT_SKP_EXT.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

Audit: FPT_SKP_EXT.1

There are no audit events foreseen.

5.5.2.1 FPT_SKP_EXT.1 – Extended: Protection of TSF Data

Hierarchical to: No other components

Dependencies: No dependencies

FPT_SKP_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall prevent reading of all pre-shared keys, symmetric keys, and private keys.

Rationale Protection of TSF Data is to ensure the pre-shared keys, symmetric keys and private keys are protected securely, and the Common Criteria does not provide a suitable SFR for the protection of such TSF data.

This extended component protects the TOE by means of strong authentication using Pre-shared Key, and it is therefore placed in the FPT class with a single component.

5.5.3 Extended: TSF Testing (FPT_TST)

Family behaviour

This family addresses the requirements for self-testing the TSF for selected correct.

Component levelling

FPT_TST_EXT.1 TSF testing requires a suite of self-testing to be run during initial start-up in order to demonstrate correct operation of the TSF.

Management: FPT_TST_EXT.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

Audit: FPT_TST_EXT.1

There are no audit events foreseen.

5.5.3.1 FPT_TST_EXT.1 – Extended: TSF Testing

Hierarchical to: No other components

Dependencies: No dependencies

FPT_TST_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall run a suite of self-tests during initial start-up (and power on) to demonstrate the correct operation of the TSF.

Rationale TSF testing is to ensure the TSF can be operated correctly, and the Common Criteria does not provide a suitable SFR for the TSF testing. In particular, there is no SFR defined for TSF testing.

This extended component protects the TOE, and it is therefore placed in the FPT class with a single component.

5.5.4 Extended: Trusted Update (FPT_TUD)

Family behaviour

This family defines requirements for the TSF to ensure that only administrators can update the TOE firmware/software, and that such firmware/software is authentic.

Component levelling

FPT_TUD_EXT.1 Trusted Update, ensures authenticity and access control for updates.

Management: FPT_TUD_EXT.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

Audit: FPT_TUD_EXT.1

There are no audit events foreseen.

5.5.4.1 FPT_TUD_EXT.1 – Extended: Trusted Update

Hierarchical to: No other components

Dependencies: [FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation]

FPT_TUD_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall provide authorized administrators the ability to query the current version of the TOE firmware/software.

FPT_TUD_EXT.1.2 The TSF shall provide authorized administrators the ability to initiate updates to TOE firmware/software.

FPT_TUD_EXT.1.3 The TSF shall provide a means to verify firmware/software updates to the TOE using a digital signature mechanism and [**published hash, no other functions**] prior to installing those updates.

Rationale Firmware/software is a form of TSF Data, and the Common Criteria does not provide a suitable SFR for the management of firmware/software. In particular, there is no SFR defined for importing TSF Data.

This extended component protects the TOE, and it is therefore placed in the FPT class with a single component.

6 Security Requirements

6.1 TOE Security Functional Requirements

The following table shows the SFRs for the TOE, and the operations performed on the components according to CC part 1: iteration (Iter.), refinement (Ref.), assignment (Ass.) and selection (Sel.).

Table 19: Security functional requirements for the TOE

Security functional group	Security functional requirement	Base security functional component	Source	Operations			
				Iter.	Ref.	Ass.	Sel.
FAU - Security audit	FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	No
	FAU_GEN.2 User identity association		HCDPP	No	No	No	No
	FAU_STG_EXT.1 Extended: Audit Trail Storage		HCDPP	No	No	No	No
FCS - Cryptographic support	FCS_CKM.1(a) Cryptographic key generation (for asymmetric keys)	FCS_CKM.1	HCDPP	Yes	No	No	Yes
	FCS_CKM.1(b) Cryptographic key generation (Symmetric Keys)	FCS_CKM.1	HCDPP	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
	FCS_CKM_EXT.4 Extended: Cryptographic key material destruction		HCDPP	No	No	No	No
	FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction		HCDPP	No	Yes	No	Yes
	FCS_COP.1(a) Cryptographic Operation (Symmetric encryption/decryption)	FCS_COP.1	HCDPP	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
	FCS_COP.1(b) Cryptographic Operation (for signature generation/verification)	FCS_COP.1	HCDPP	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
	FCS_COP.1(c) Cryptographic operation (Hash algorithm)	FCS_COP.1	HCDPP	Yes	No	No	Yes
	FCS_COP.1(g) Cryptographic operation (for keyed-hash message authentication)	FCS_COP.1	HCDPP	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Security functional group	Security functional requirement	Base security functional component	Source	Operations			
				Iter.	Ref.	Ass.	Sel.
	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1 Extended: IPsec selected		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	Yes
	FCS_KYC_EXT.1 Extended: Key chaining		HCDPP	No	No	No	Yes
	FCS_RBG_EXT.1 Extended: Cryptographic Operation (Random Bit Generation)		HCDPP	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
FDP - User data protection	FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control		HCDPP	No	No	No	No
	FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	No
	FDP_DSK_EXT.1 Extended: Protection of Data on Disk		HCDPP	No	No	No	Yes
	FDP_FXS_EXT.1 Extended: Fax separation		HCDPP	No	No	No	No
	FDP_RIP.1(a) Subset residual information protection	FDP_RIP.1	HCDPP	Yes	No	No	No
FIA - Identification and authentication	FIA_AFL.1 Authentication failure handling		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	Yes
	FIA_ATD.1 User attribute definition		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	No
	FIA_PMG_EXT.1 Extended: Password Management		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	Yes
	FIA_PSK_EXT.1 Extended: Pre-shared key composition		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	Yes
	FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	No
	FIA_UAU.7 Protected authentication feedback		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	No
	FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	No

Security functional group	Security functional requirement	Base security functional component	Source	Operations			
				Iter.	Ref.	Ass.	Sel.
	FIA_USB.1 User-subject binding		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	No
FMT - Security management	FMT_MOF.1 Management of security functions behaviour		HCDPP	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	FMT_MSA.1 Management of security attributes		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	Yes
	FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation		HCDPP	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	FMT_MTD.1 Management of TSF data		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	Yes
	FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	No
	FMT_SMR.1 Security roles		HCDPP	No	No	No	No
FPT - Protection of the TSF	FPT_KYP_EXT.1 Extended: Protection of Key and Material		HCDPP	No	No	No	No
	FPT_SKP_EXT.1 Extended: Protection of TSF data		HCDPP	No	No	No	No
	FPT_STM.1 Reliable time stamps		HCDPP	No	No	No	No
	FPT_TST_EXT.1 Extended: TSF testing		HCDPP	No	No	No	No
	FPT_TUD_EXT.1 Extended: Trusted Update		HCDPP	No	No	No	Yes
FTA - TOE access	FTA_SSL.3 TSF-initiated termination		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	No
FTP - Trusted path/channels	FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel		HCDPP	No	No	Yes	Yes
	FTP_TRP.1(a) Trusted path (for Administrators)	FTP_TRP.1	HCDPP	Yes	No	No	Yes
	FTP_TRP.1(b) Trusted path (for Non-administrators)	FTP_TRP.1	HCDPP	Yes	No	No	Yes

6.1.1 Security audit (FAU)

6.1.1.1 Audit data generation (FAU_GEN.1)

FAU_GEN.1.1 The TSF shall be able to generate an audit record of the following auditable events:

- a) Start-up and shutdown of the audit functions;
- b) All auditable events for the not specified level of audit; and
- c) All auditable events specified in Table 20, **none**.

FAU_GEN.1.2 The TSF shall record within each audit record at least the following information:

- a) Date and time of the event, type of event, subject identity (if applicable), and the outcome (success or failure) of the event; and
- b) For each audit event type, based on the auditable event definitions of the functional components included in the PP/ST, additional information specified in Table 20, **none**.

Table 20: Auditable events

Auditable event	Relevant SFR(s)	Additional information	Origin
Job completion	FDP_ACF.1	Type of job	[HCDPP]
Unsuccessful user authentication	FIA_UAU.1	Required by [HCDPP]: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None 	[HCDPP]
Unsuccessful user identification	FIA_UID.1	Required by [HCDPP]: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None Added by vendor: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The attempted user identity 	[HCDPP]
Use of management functions	FMT_SMF.1	None	[HCDPP]
Modification to the group of Users that are part of a role	FMT_SMR.1	None	[HCDPP]
Changes to the time	FPT_STM.1	Required by [HCDPP]: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None Added by vendor: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New date and time • Old date and time 	[HCDPP]
Failure to establish session	FTP_ITC.1 FTP_TRP.1(a) FTP_TRP.1(b)	Required by [HCDPP]: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reason for failure Added by vendor:	[HCDPP]

Auditable event	Relevant SFR(s)	Additional information	Origin
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Non-TOE endpoint of connection (e.g., IP address) 	
Locking an account	FIA_AFL.1	User name associated with account	Vendor
Unlocking an account	FIA_AFL.1	User name associated with account	Vendor

TSS Link: *TSS for FAU_GEN.1.*

6.1.1.2 User identity association (FAU_GEN.2)

FAU_GEN.2.1 For audit events resulting from actions of identified users, the TSF shall be able to associate each auditable event with the identity of the user that caused the event.

TSS Link: *TSS for FAU_GEN_2.*

6.1.1.3 Extended: Audit Trail Storage (FAU_STG_EXT.1)

FAU_STG_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall be able to transmit the generated audit data to an External IT Entity using a trusted channel according to FTP_ITC.1.

TSS Link: *TSS for FAU_STG_EXT_1.*

6.1.2 Cryptographic support (FCS)

6.1.2.1 Cryptographic key generation (asymmetric keys) (FCS_CKM.1(a))

FCS_CKM.1.1(a) The TSF shall generate asymmetric cryptographic keys used for key establishment in accordance with

- **NIST Special Publication 800-56A, "Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key Establishment Schemes Using Discrete Logarithm Cryptography" for finite field-based key establishment schemes**
- **NIST Special Publication 800-56A, "Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key Establishment Schemes Using Discrete Logarithm Cryptography" for elliptic curve-based key establishment schemes and implementing "NIST curves" P-256, P-384 and P-521 (as defined in FIPS PUB 186-4, "Digital Signature Standard")**

and specified cryptographic key sizes equivalent to, or greater than, a symmetric key strength of 112 bits.

Table 21: Asymmetric key generation

Usage	Implementation	Purpose	Algorithm	Key sizes	Related SFRs
IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	KAS FFC	DH (dhEphem)	P=2048, SHA2-256	FCS_COP.1(c)
			DSA	L=2048, N=224; L=2048, N=256; L=3072, N=256	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1 FCS_RBG_EXT.1
		KAS ECC	ECDH (ephemeral unified)	P-256, SHA2-256; P-384, SHA2-384; P-521, SHA2-512	
			ECDSA	P-256, P-384, P-521	

TSS Link: [TSS for FCS_CKM.1\(a\)](#).

6.1.2.2 Cryptographic key generation (symmetric keys) (FCS_CKM.1(b))

FCS_CKM.1.1(b) The TSF shall generate symmetric cryptographic keys using a Random Bit Generator as specified in FCS_RBG_EXT.1 and specified cryptographic key sizes *defined in Table 22* that meet the following: No Standard.

Table 22: Symmetric key generation

Usage	Implementation	Purpose	Key sizes	Related SFRs
Drive-lock password (BEV)	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	BEV generation	256 bits	FCS_KYC_EXT.1, FCS_RBG_EXT.1

TSS Link: [TSS for FCS_CKM.1\(b\)](#).

6.1.2.3 Extended: Cryptographic key material destruction (FCS_CKM_EXT.4)

FCS_CKM_EXT.4.1 The TSF shall destroy all plaintext secret and private cryptographic keys and cryptographic critical security parameters when no longer needed.

TSS Link: [TSS for FCS_CKM_EXT.4](#).

6.1.2.4 Cryptographic key destruction (FCS_CKM.4)

FCS_CKM.4.1 The TSF shall destroy cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key destruction method

- **For volatile memory, the destruction shall be executed by a removal of power to the memory;**

that meets the following: No Standard.

TSS Link: [TSS for FCS_CKM.4](#).

6.1.2.5 Cryptographic Operation (Symmetric encryption/decryption) (FCS_COP.1(a))

FCS_COP.1.1(a) The TSF shall perform encryption and decryption in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm AES operating in **the modes defined in Table 23** and cryptographic key sizes 128-bits and 256-bits that meets the following:

- **FIPS PUB 197, "Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)"**
- **NIST SP 800-38A**

Table 23: AES encryption/decryption algorithms

Usage	Implementation	Purpose	Algorithm	Modes	Key sizes	Related SFRs
IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	Data encryption and decryption	AES	CBC	128 bits, 256 bits	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1
		Encryption in CTR_DRBG(AES)	AES	ECB	256 bits	
IPsec	HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API	Data encryption and decryption	AES	CBC	128 bits, 256 bits	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1
Drive-lock password (BEV)	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	Encryption in CTR_DRBG(AES)	AES	CTR	256 bits	FCS_KYC_EXT.1
			AES	ECB	256 bits	FCS_RBG_EXT.1

TSS Link: *TSS for FCS_COP.1(a).*

6.1.2.6 Cryptographic Operation (for signature generation/verification) (FCS_COP.1(b))

FCS_COP.1.1(b) The TSF shall perform cryptographic signature services in accordance with a

- **RSA Digital Signature Algorithm (rDSA) with key sizes (modulus) of the bit sizes defined in Table 24**

that meets the following

Case: RSA Digital Signature Algorithm

- **FIPS PUB 186-4, "Digital Signature Standard".**

Table 24: Asymmetric algorithms for signature generation/verification

Usage	Implementation	Purpose	Algorithm	Key sizes	Related SFRs
IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	Signature generation and verification based on PKCS#1 v1.5	RSA	2048 bits, 3072 bits	FCS_IPSEC_EX T.1
Trusted update	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	Signature verification based on PKCS#1 v1.5	RSA	2048 bits	FPT_TUD_EXT.1
TSF testing	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	Signature verification based on PKCS#1 v1.5	RSA	2048 bits	FPT_TST_EXT.1

TSS Link: [TSS for FCS_COP.1\(b\)](#).

6.1.2.7 Cryptographic operation (Hash algorithm) (FCS_COP.1(c))

FCS_COP.1.1(c) The TSF shall perform cryptographic hashing services in accordance with **the algorithms in Table 25** that meet the following: [ISO/IEC 10118-3:2004].

Table 25: Hash algorithms

Usage	Implementation	Purpose	Algorithm	Related SFRs
IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	Pre-shared keys	SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-512	FIA_PSK_EXT.1
		KAS FFC	SHA2-256	FCS_CKM.1(a)
		KAS ECC	SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512	
		RSA digital signature generation	SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512	FCS_COP.1(b)
		RSA digital signature verification	SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512	
		HMAC	SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512	FCS_COP.1(g)

Usage	Implementation	Purpose	Algorithm	Related SFRs
IPsec	HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API	HMAC	SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512	FCS_COP.1(g)
		HMAC (HMAC_DRBG)	SHA-2-256	FCS_COP.1(g) FCS_RBG_EXT.1
Trusted update	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	RSA digital signature verification	SHA2-256	FPT_TUD_EXT.1
TSF testing	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	RSA digital signature verification	SHA2-256	FPT_TST_EXT.1

TSS Link: [TSS for FCS_COP.1\(c\)](#).

6.1.2.8 Cryptographic operation (for keyed-hash message authentication) (FCS_COP.1(g))

FCS_COP.1.1(g) The TSF shall perform keyed-hash message authentication in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm ~~HMAC~~ *defined in Table 26*, key size **defined in Table 26** and message digest sizes *defined in Table 26* in bits that meet the following: FIPS PUB 198-1, "The Keyed-Hash Message Authentication Code, and FIPS PUB 180-3, "Secure Hash Standard."

Table 26: HMAC algorithms

Usage	Implementation	Algorithm	Key size	Digest size	Related SFRs
IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	HMAC-SHA2-256-128	256 bits	256 bits	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1
		HMAC-SHA2-384-192	384 bits	384 bits	
		HMAC-SHA2-512-256	512 bits	512 bits	
IPsec	HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API	HMAC-SHA1-96	160 bits	160 bits	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1
		HMAC-SHA2-256-128	256 bits	256 bits	
		HMAC-SHA2-384-192	384 bits	384 bits	
		HMAC-SHA2-512-256	512 bits	512 bits	

TSS Link: [TSS for FCS_COP.1\(g\)](#).

6.1.2.9 Extended: IPsec selected (FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1)

FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall implement the IPsec architecture as specified in RFC 4301.

- FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.2** The TSF shall implement **transport mode**.
- FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.3** The TSF shall have a nominal, final entry in the SPD that matches anything that is otherwise unmatched, and discards it.
- FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.4** The TSF shall implement the IPsec protocol ESP as defined by RFC 4303 using **the cryptographic algorithms AES-CBC-128 (as specified by RFC 3602) together with a Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA)-based HMAC, AES-CBC-256 (as specified by RFC 3602) together with a Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA)-based HMAC**.
- FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.5** The TSF shall implement the protocol: **IKEv1, using Main Mode for Phase 1 exchanges, as defined in RFCs 2407, 2408, 2409, RFC 4109, no other RFCs for extended sequence numbers and RFC 4868 for hash functions**.
- FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.6** The TSF shall ensure the encrypted payload in the **IKEv1** protocol uses the cryptographic algorithms AES-CBC-128, AES-CBC-256 as specified in RFC 3602 and **no other algorithm**.
- FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.7** The TSF shall ensure that IKEv1 Phase 1 exchanges use only main mode.
- FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.8** The TSF shall ensure that **IKEv1 SA lifetimes can be established based on length of time, where the time values can be limited to: 24 hours for Phase 1 SAs and 8 hours for Phase 2 SAs**.
- FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.9** The TSF shall ensure that all IKE protocols implement DH Groups 14 (2048-bit MODP), and **DH Group 15 (3072-bit MODP), DH Group 16 (4096-bit MODP), DH Group 17 (6144-bit MODP), DH Group 18 (8192-bit MODP)**.
- FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.10** The TSF shall ensure that all IKE protocols perform Peer Authentication using the **RSA** algorithm and Pre-shared Keys.

TSS Link: *TSS for FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.*

6.1.2.10 Extended: Key chaining (FCS_KYC_EXT.1)

- FCS_KYC_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall maintain a key chain of: **one, using submasks as the BEV or DEK** while maintaining an effective strength of **256 bits**.

TSS Link: *TSS for FCS_KYC_EXT.1.*

6.1.2.11 Extended: Cryptographic Operation (Random Bit Generation) (FCS_RBG_EXT.1)

- FCS_RBG_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall perform all deterministic random bit generation services in accordance with **NIST SP 800-90A** using *the algorithm defined in Table 27*.
- FCS_RBG_EXT.1.2** The deterministic RBG shall be seeded by at least one entropy source that accumulates entropy from **the number defined in Table 27 of hardware-based noise source(s)** with a minimum of *bits defined in Table 27* of entropy at least equal to the greatest security strength, according to ISO/IEC 18031:2011 Table C.1 "Security Strength Table for Hash Functions", of the keys and hashes that it will generate.

Table 27: DRBG algorithms

Usage	Implementation	Algorithm	Hardware noise sources	Minimum entropy bits	Related SFRs
IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	CTR_DRBG(AES)	1	256 bits	FCS_CKM.1(a) FCS_COP.1(a) FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1
IPsec	HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API	HMAC_DRBG(HMAC-SHA2-256)	1	256 bits	FCS_CKM.1(a) FCS_COP.1(g) FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1
Drive-lock password (BEV)	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	CTR_DRBG(AES)	1	256 bits	FCS_CKM.1(b) FCS_COP.1(a) FCS_KYC_EXT.1

TSS Link: [TSS for FCS_RBGB_EXT.1](#).

6.1.3 User data protection (FDP)

6.1.3.1 Subset access control (FDP_ACC.1)

FDP_ACC.1.1 The TSF shall enforce the User Data Access Control SFP on subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects specified in [Table 28](#) and [Table 29](#).

TSS Link: [TSS for FDP_ACC.1](#).

6.1.3.2 Security attribute based access control (FDP_ACF.1)

FDP_ACF.1.1 The TSF shall enforce the User Data Access Control SFP to objects based on the following: subjects, objects, and attributes specified in [Table 28](#) and [Table 29](#).

FDP_ACF.1.2 The TSF shall enforce the following rules to determine if an operation among controlled subjects and controlled objects is allowed: rules governing access among controlled subjects and controlled objects using controlled operations on controlled objects specified in [Table 28](#) and [Table 29](#).

FDP_ACF.1.3 The TSF shall explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: **none**.

FDP_ACF.1.4 The TSF shall explicitly deny access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: **none**.

Table 28: D.USER.DOC Access Control SFP

	“Create”	“Read”	“Modify”	“Delete”

Print	<i>Operation:</i>	<i>Submit a document to be printed</i>	<i>View image or Release printed output</i>	<i>Modify stored document</i>	<i>Delete stored document</i>
	Job owner	n/a	allowed	denied by design	allowed
	U.ADMIN	n/a	denied	denied by design	allowed
	U.NORMAL	n/a	denied	denied by design	denied
	Unauthenticated	allowed	denied	denied by design	denied
Scan	<i>Operation:</i>	<i>Submit a document for scanning</i>	<i>View scanned image</i>	<i>Modify stored image</i>	<i>Delete stored image</i>
	Job owner	allowed	allowed	allowed	allowed
	U.ADMIN	denied	denied	denied by design	allowed
	U.NORMAL	denied	denied	denied by design	denied
	Unauthenticated	denied	denied	denied by design	denied
Copy	<i>Operation:</i>	<i>Submit a document for copying</i>	<i>View scanned image or Release printed copy output</i>	<i>Modify stored image</i>	<i>Delete stored image</i>
	Job owner	allowed	allowed	allowed	allowed
	U.ADMIN	denied	denied	denied by design	allowed
	U.NORMAL	denied	denied	denied by design	denied
	Unauthenticated	denied	denied	denied by design	denied
Fax send	<i>Operation:</i>	<i>Submit a document to send as a fax</i>	<i>View scanned image</i>	<i>Modify stored image</i>	<i>Delete stored image</i>

	Job owner	allowed	allowed	allowed	allowed
	U.ADMIN	denied	denied	denied by design	allowed
	U.NORMAL	denied	denied	denied by design	denied
	Unauthenticated	denied	denied	denied by design	denied
Fax receive	<i>Operation:</i>	<i>Receive a fax and store it</i>	<i>View fax image or Release printed fax output</i>	<i>Modify image of received fax</i>	<i>Delete image of received fax</i>
	Fax owner	allowed	allowed	denied by design	allowed
	U.ADMIN	denied	allowed	denied by design	allowed
	U.NORMAL	denied	denied	denied by design	denied
	Unauthenticated	denied	denied	denied by design	denied
Storage/retrieval	<i>Operation:</i>	<i>Store document</i>	<i>Retrieve stored document</i>	<i>Modify stored document</i>	<i>Delete stored document</i>
	Job owner	allowed (note 1)	allowed	denied by design	allowed
	U.ADMIN	denied	Fax: allowed Print: denied	denied by design	allowed
	U.NORMAL	denied	denied	denied by design	denied
	Unauthenticated	allowed (condition 1)	denied	denied by design	denied

Table 29: D.USER.JOB Access Control SFP

		“Create”	“Read”	“Modify”	“Delete”
Print	<i>Operation:</i>	<i>Create print job</i>	<i>View print queue / log</i>	<i>Modify print job</i>	<i>Cancel print job</i>

	Job owner	n/a	allowed	denied by design	allowed
	U.ADMIN	n/a	allowed	denied by design	allowed
	U.NORMAL	n/a	Queue: allowed Log: denied	denied by design	denied
	Unauthenticated	allowed	denied	denied by design	denied
Scan	<i>Operation:</i>	<i>Create scan job</i>	<i>View scan status / log</i>	<i>Modify scan job</i>	<i>Cancel scan job</i>
	Job owner	allowed (note 2)	allowed	denied by design	allowed
	U.ADMIN	denied	allowed	denied by design	allowed
	U.NORMAL	denied	Status: allowed Log: denied	denied by design	denied
	Unauthenticated	denied	denied	denied by design	denied
Copy	<i>Operation:</i>	<i>Create copy job</i>	<i>View copy status / log</i>	<i>Modify copy job</i>	<i>Cancel copy job</i>
	Job owner	allowed (note 2)	allowed	denied by design	allowed
	U.ADMIN	denied	allowed	denied by design	allowed
	U.NORMAL	denied	Status: allowed Log: denied	denied by design	denied
	Unauthenticated	denied	denied	denied by design	denied
Fax send	<i>Operation:</i>	<i>Create fax job</i>	<i>View fax job queue / log</i>	<i>Modify fax send job</i>	<i>Cancel fax send job</i>
	Job owner	allowed (note 2)	allowed	denied by design	allowed
	U.ADMIN	denied	allowed	denied by design	allowed

	U.NORMAL	denied	Queue: allowed Log: denied	denied by design	denied
	Unauthenticated	denied	denied	denied by design	denied
Fax receive	<i>Operation:</i>	<i>Create fax job</i>	<i>View fax receive status / log</i>	<i>Modify fax receive job</i>	<i>Cancel fax receive job</i>
	Fax owner	allowed (note 3)	allowed	denied by design	allowed
	U.ADMIN	denied (note 4)	allowed	denied by design	allowed
	U.NORMAL	denied (note 4)	Status: allowed Log: denied	denied by design	denied
	Unauthenticated	denied	denied	denied by design	denied
Storage/ retrieval	<i>Operation:</i>	<i>Create storage / retrieval job</i>	<i>View storage / retrieval log</i>	<i>Modify storage / retrieval job</i>	<i>Cancel storage / retrieval job</i>
	Job owner	allowed (note 1)	allowed	denied by design	allowed
	U.ADMIN	denied	allowed	denied by design	allowed
	U.NORMAL	denied	denied	denied by design	denied
	Unauthenticated	allowed (condition 1)	denied	denied by design	denied

TSS Link: [TSS for FDP_ACF.1.](#)

HCDPP Application Note: The term "n/a" means not applicable.

Condition 1: Jobs submitted by unauthenticated users must contain a credential that the TOE can use to identify the Job Owner.

Note 1: Job Owner is identified by a credential or assigned to an authorized User as part of the process of submitting a print or storage Job.

Note 2: Job Owner is assigned to an authorized User as part of the process of initiating a scan, copy, fax send, or retrieval Job.

Note 3: Job Owner of received faxes is assigned by default or configuration. Minimally, ownership of received faxes is assigned to a specific user or U.ADMIN role.

Note 4: PSTN faxes are received from outside of the TOE, they are not initiated by Users of the TOE.

6.1.3.3 Extended: Protection of Data on Disk (FDP_DSK_EXT.1)

FDP_DSK_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall use a self-encrypting Field-Replaceable Nonvolatile Storage Device that is separately CC certified to conform to the FDE EE cPP, such that any Field-Replaceable Nonvolatile Storage Device contains no plaintext User Document Data and no plaintext confidential TSF Data.

FDP_DSK_EXT.1.2 The TSF shall encrypt all protected data without user intervention.

TSS Link: *TSS for FDP_DSK_EXT.1.*

6.1.3.4 Extended: Fax separation (FDP_FXS_EXT.1)

FDP_FXS_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall prohibit communication via the fax interface, except transmitting or receiving User Data using fax protocols.

TSS Link: *TSS for FDP_FXS_EXT.1.*

6.1.3.5 Subset residual information protection (FDP_RIP.1(a))

FDP_RIP.1.1(a) The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made unavailable by overwriting data upon the deallocation of the resource from the following objects: D.USER.DOC.

TSS Link: *TSS for FDP_RIP.1(a).*

6.1.4 Identification and authentication (FIA)

6.1.4.1 Authentication failure handling (FIA_AFL.1)

FIA_AFL.1.1 The TSF shall detect when **an administrator configurable positive integer within 3 to 10** unsuccessful authentication attempts occur related to **the last successful authentication for the indicated user identity for the following interfaces**

- **Control Panel, EWS, and REST**
 - **Local Device Sign In**

FIA_AFL.1.2 When the defined number of unsuccessful authentication attempts has been **met**, the TSF shall **lock the account**.

TSS Link: *TSS for FIA_AFL.1.*

6.1.4.2 User attribute definition (FIA_ATD.1)

FIA_ATD.1.1 The TSF shall maintain the following list of security attributes belonging to individual users:

- **Control Panel users**
 - **Internal Authentication (Local Device Sign In)**

- **Identifier: Display name**
 - **Authenticator: Password**
 - **PS: Device Administrator PS**
 - **External Authentication (LDAP Sign In and Windows Sign In)**
 - **PS: Network user PS**
- **EWS users**
 - **Internal Authentication (Local Device Sign In)**
 - **Identifier: Display name**
 - **Authenticator: Password**
 - **Role: (implied U.ADMIN)**
 - **External Authentication (LDAP Sign In and Windows Sign In)**
 - **Role: (implied U.ADMIN)**
- **REST users**
 - **Internal Authentication (Local Device Sign In)**
 - **Identifier: Display name**
 - **Authenticator: Password**
 - **Role: (implied U.ADMIN)**
 - **External Authentication (Windows Sign In)**
 - **Role: (implied U.ADMIN)**

Application Note: PJJ users are unauthenticated.

TSS Link: *TSS for FIA_ATD.1.*

6.1.4.3 Extended: Password Management (FIA_PMG_EXT.1)

FIA_PMG_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall provide the following password management capabilities for User passwords:

- a) Passwords shall be able to be composed of any combination of upper and lower case letters, numbers, and the following special characters
 - **Device Administrator Password**
 - `!"#$%^&*()'"", """, """, "+", ",", "-", ".", "/", "\", ":", ";", "<", "=", ">", "?", "[", "]", "_", "|", "~", "{", "}"`
- b) Minimum password length shall be settable by an Administrator, and have the capability to require passwords of 15 characters or greater.

TSS Link: *TSS for FIA_PMG_EXT.1.*

Application Note: This SFR applies to the Device Administrator Password—which is used by the Control Panel, EWS, and REST interfaces.

6.1.4.4 Extended: Pre-shared key composition (FIA_PSK_EXT.1)

FIA_PSK_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall be able to use pre-shared keys for IPsec.

FIA_PSK_EXT.1.2 The TSF shall be able to accept text-based pre-shared keys that are:

- a) 22 characters in length and **up to 128 characters in length**;
- b) composed of any combination of upper and lower case letters, numbers, and special characters (that include: "!", "@", "#", "\$", "%", "^", "&", "*", "(", and ")").

FIA_PSK_EXT.1.3 The TSF shall condition the text-based pre-shared keys by using **SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-512** and be able to **accept bit-based pre-shared keys**.

TSS Link: *TSS for FIA_PSK_EXT.1.*

6.1.4.5 Timing of authentication (FIA_UAU.1)

FIA_UAU.1.1 The TSF shall allow

- **Control Panel:**
 - **View the Welcome message**
 - **Reset the session**
 - **Select the Sign In button**
 - **Select a sign-in method from Sign In screen**
 - **View the device status information**
 - **Change the display language for the session**
 - **Place the device into sleep mode**
 - **View or print network connectivity status information**
 - **View or print Web Services status information**
 - **View help information**
 - **View the system time**
- **EWS:**
 - **Select a sign in method**
- **REST:**
 - **Discover a subset of the Web Services**
 - **Obtain the X.509v3 certificate on the print engine**
 - **Obtain the secure configuration settings on the print engine**
 - **Obtain list of installed licenses**
 - **Install a digitally signed license**
 - **Delete a license (if the license in the payload of the request is digitally signed)**
 - **Obtain Web Services registration status**
 - **Obtain printer Claim Code for Web Services registration**
 - **Set printer Claim Code for Web Services registration**

on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is authenticated.

FIA_UAU.1.2 The TSF shall require each user to be successfully authenticated before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

TSS Link: *TSS for FIA_UAU.1.*

6.1.4.6 Protected authentication feedback (FIA_UAU.7)

FIA_UAU.7.1 The TSF shall provide only **dots** to the user while the authentication is in progress.

TSS Link: *TSS for FIA_UAU.7.*

6.1.4.7 Timing of identification (FIA_UID.1)

FIA_UID.1.1 The TSF shall allow

- **Control Panel:**
 - **View the Welcome message**
 - **Reset the session**
 - **Select the Sign In button**
 - **Select a sign-in method from Sign In screen**
 - **View the device status information**
 - **Change the display language for the session**
 - **Place the device into sleep mode**
 - **View or print network connectivity status information**
 - **View or print Web Services status information**
 - **View help information**
 - **View the system time**
- **EWS:**
 - **Select a sign-in method**
- **REST:**
 - **Discover a subset of the Web Services**
 - **Obtain the X.509v3 certificate on the print engine**
 - **Obtain the secure configuration settings on the print engine**
 - **Obtain list of installed licenses**
 - **Install a license if the license in the payload of the request is digitally signed**
 - **Delete a license if the license in the payload of the request is digitally signed**
 - **Obtain Web Services registration status**
 - **Obtain printer Claim Code for Web Services registration**
 - **Set printer Claim Code for Web Services registration**
 -

on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is identified.

FIA_UID.1.2 The TSF shall require each user to be successfully identified before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

TSS Link: *TSS for FIA_UID.1.*

6.1.4.8 User-subject binding (FIA_USB.1)

FIA_USB.1.1

The TSF shall associate the following user security attributes with subjects acting on the behalf of that user:

1) User identifier

- Control Panel users:
 - Local Device Sign In method: Display name
 - LDAP Sign In method: LDAP username
 - Windows Sign In method: Windows username
- EWS users:
 - Local Device Sign In: Display name
 - LDAP Sign In: LDAP username
 - Windows Sign In: Windows username
- REST users:
 - Local Device Sign In: Display name
 - Windows Sign In: Windows username

2) User role

- Control Panel users: U.ADMIN and U.NORMAL (User session PS)
- EWS users: U.ADMIN
- REST users: U.ADMIN

FIA_USB.1.2

The TSF shall enforce the following rules on the initial association of user security attributes with subjects acting on the behalf of users: **Control Panel and EWS user session PS:**

- **Internal Authentication (Local Device Sign In)**
 - Device Administrator session PS = Device Administrator PS
- **External Authentication (LDAP Sign In and Windows Sign In)**

If a PS is associated with a network user account, then: User session PS = Network user PS + Device Guest PS

Else, if the network user is associated with one or more network group PSs, then: User session PS = Network group PSs + Device Guest PS

Else: User session PS = External Authentication method PS + Device Guest PS
- **If the "Allow users to choose alternate sign-in methods" function is disabled, the user's session PS calculated above will be reduced to exclude the permissions of applications whose sign in method does not match the sign in method used by the user to sign in.**

FIA_USB.1.3

The TSF shall enforce the following rules governing changes to the user security attributes associated with subjects acting on the behalf of users:

- **None**—The TOE does not allow a subject to change its in-session security attributes.

TSS Link: *TSS for FIA_USB.1*.

6.1.5 Security management (FMT)

6.1.5.1 Management of security functions behaviour (FMT_MOF.1)

FMT_MOF.1.1 The TSF shall restrict the ability to *perform the actions defined in Table 30* on the functions **defined in Table 30** to U.ADMIN.

Table 30: Management of functions

Function	Actions	Related SFRs	Application note
Allow users to choose alternate sign-in methods at the product control panel	Enable, disable	FIA_USB.1	The “Allow users to choose alternate sign-in methods at the product control panel” function affects how the TOE authorizes Control Panel users.
Control Panel Mandatory Sign-in	Enable, disable	FIA_ATD.1 FIA_UAU.1 FIA_UID.1	In the evaluated configuration, the "Control Panel Mandatory Sign-in" function must be enabled.
Windows Sign In	Enable, disable		In the evaluated configuration, at least one External Authentication mechanism (Windows Sign In or LDAP Sign In) must be enabled.
LDAP Sign In	Enable, disable		In the evaluated configuration, at least one External Authentication mechanism (Windows Sign In or LDAP Sign In) must be enabled.
Account lockout	Enable, disable	FIA_AFL.1	In the evaluated configuration, account lockout for Device Administrator account.
Enhanced security event logging	Enable, disable	FAU_GEN.1	In the evaluated configuration, enhanced security event logging must be enabled.
Managing Temporary Job Files (i.e., image overwrite)	Determine the behavior of, modify the behavior of	FDP_RIP.1(a)	The TOE offers three options: Non-Secure Fast Erase (no overwrite), Secure Fast Erase (overwrite 1 time), and Secure Sanitize Erase (overwrite 3 times). In the evaluated configuration, the administrator must select either Secure Fast Erase or Secure Sanitize Erase.

Function	Actions	Related SFRs	Application note
IPsec	Enable, disable	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1	In the evaluated configuration, IPsec must be enabled.
Automatically synchronize with a Network Time Service	Enable, disable	FPT_STM.1	In the evaluated configuration, NTS must be enabled.

TSS Link: *TSS for FMT_MOF.1.*

6.1.5.2 Management of security attributes (FMT_MSA.1)

FMT_MSA.1.1 The TSF shall enforce the User Data Access Control SFP to restrict the ability to perform the restricted operations defined in Table 31 on the security attributes defined in Table 31 to the authorized identified roles defined in Table 31.

Table 31: Management of security attributes

TOE component	Security attribute	Available operations	Restricted operations	Authorized identified roles	Default value property	Default value override roles
Control Panel and EWS subject attributes	Account identity (Internal Authentication mechanism)	None	None	n/a	n/a	No role
	Account identity (External Authentication mechanisms)	None	None	n/a	n/a	No role
	Device Administrator permission set permissions	View	View	U.ADMIN	Permissive	No role
	Device User and Device Guest permission set permissions	Modify, view	Modify, view	U.ADMIN	Restrictive	No role
	Custom permission set permissions	Create, modify, delete, view	Create, modify, delete, view	U.ADMIN	Restrictive	No role
Job Storage object attributes	Job owner	View	View	Job owner, U.ADMIN	n/a	No role

TOE component	Security attribute	Available operations	Restricted operations	Authorized identified roles	Default value property	Default value override roles
	Fax owner	View	View	U.ADMIN	Restrictive	No role

TSS Link: *TSS for FMT_MSA.1.*

6.1.5.3 Static attribute initialisation (FMT_MSA.3)

FMT_MSA.3.1 The TSF shall enforce the User Data Access Control SFP to provide the properties defined in **Table 31** of the default values for security attributes that are used to enforce the SFP.

FMT_MSA.3.2 The TSF shall allow the *default value override role defined in Table 31* to specify alternative initial values to override the default values when an object or information is created.

TSS Link: *TSS for FMT_MSA.3.*

HCDPP Application Note: FMT_MSA.3.2 applies only to security attributes whose default values can be overridden.

6.1.5.4 Management of TSF data (FMT_MTD.1)

FMT_MTD.1.1 The TSF shall restrict the ability to perform the specified operations on the specified TSF Data to the roles specified in **Table 32**.

Table 32: Management of TSF Data

Data	Operation	Authorized roles	Related SFR(s)
List of TSF Data owned by U.NORMAL or associated with Documents or jobs owned by a U.NORMAL			
None	n/a	n/a	n/a
List of TSF Data not owned by U.NORMAL			
Device Administrator password	Change	U.ADMIN	FIA_PMG_EXT.1
Permission set associations (except on the Device Administrator account)	Add, delete, view	U.ADMIN	FDP_ACF.1 FMT_MSA.1
Permission set associations (only on the Device Administrator account)	View	U.ADMIN	
List of software, firmware, and related configuration data			
IPsec CA and identity certificates	Import, delete	U.ADMIN	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1
IPsec pre-shared keys	Set, change	U.ADMIN	FIA_PSK_EXT.1
NTS server configuration data	Change	U.ADMIN	FPT_STM.1

Data	Operation	Authorized roles	Related SFR(s)
Minimum password length	Change	U.ADMIN	FIA_PMG_EXT.1
Account lockout maximum attempts	Change	U.ADMIN	FIA_AFL.1
Account lockout interval	Change	U.ADMIN	
Account reset lockout counter interval	Change	U.ADMIN	
Session inactivity timeout	Change	U.ADMIN	FTA_SSL.3

TSS Link: [TSS for FMT_MTD.1](#).

6.1.5.5 Specification of Management Functions (FMT_SMF.1)

FMT_SMF.1.1 The TSF shall be capable of performing the following management functions: **defined in Table 33**.

Table 33: Specification of management functions

Management function	SFR	TSS page number	Objectives
Management of Device Administrator password	FMT_MTD.1	137	O.USER_AUTHORIZATION, O.USER_I&A
Management of account lockout policy	FMT_MTD.1	137	O.USER_I&A
Management of minimum length password settings	FMT_MTD.1	137	
Management of Internal and External authentication mechanisms	FMT_MOF.1	134	
Management of "Allow users to choose alternate sign-in methods at the product control panel" function	FMT_MOF.1	134	
Management of session inactivity timeouts	FMT_MTD.1	137	
Management of permission set associations	FMT_MTD.1	137	
Management of permission set permissions	FMT_MSA.1	135	O.ACCESS_CONTROL
Management of IPsec pre-shared keys	FMT_MTD.1	137	O.COMMS_PROTECTION
Management of CA and identity certificates for IPsec authentication	FMT_MTD.1	137	
Management of enhanced security event logging	FMT_MOF.1	134	O.AUDIT
Management of NTS configuration data	FMT_MTD.1	137	

Management function	SFR	TSS page number	Objectives
Management of image overwrite option in "Managing Temporary Job Files"	FMT_MOF.1	134	O.IMAGE_OVERWRITE

TSS Link: *TSS for FMT_SMF.1.*

6.1.5.6 Security roles (FMT_SMR.1)

FMT_SMR.1.1 The TSF shall maintain the roles U.ADMIN, U.NORMAL.

FMT_SMR.1.2 The TSF shall be able to associate users with roles.

TSS Link: *TSS for FMT_SMR.1.*

6.1.6 Protection of the TSF (FPT)

6.1.6.1 Extended: Protection of Key and Material (FPT_KYP_EXT.1)

FPT_KYP_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall not store plaintext keys that are part of the keychain specified by FCS_KYC_EXT.1 in any Field-Replaceable Nonvolatile Storage Device.

TSS Link: *TSS for FPT_KYP_EXT.1.*

6.1.6.2 Extended: Protection of TSF data (FPT_SKP_EXT.1)

FPT_SKP_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall prevent reading of all pre-shared keys, symmetric keys, and private keys.

TSS Link: *TSS for FPT_SKP_EXT.1.*

HCDPP Application Note: The intent of the requirement is that an administrator is unable to read or view the identified keys (stored or ephemeral) through "normal" interfaces. While it is understood that the administrator could directly read memory to view these keys, doing so is not a trivial task and may require substantial work on the part of an administrator. Since the administrator is considered a trusted agent, it is assumed they would not engage in such an activity.

6.1.6.3 Reliable time stamps (FPT_STM.1)

FPT_STM.1.1 The TSF shall be able to provide reliable time stamps.

TSS Link: *TSS for FPT_STM.1.*

6.1.6.4 Extended: TSF testing (FPT_TST_EXT.1)

FPT_TST_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall run a suite of self-tests during initial start-up (and power on) to demonstrate the correct operation of the TSF.

TSS Link: *TSS for FPT_TST_EXT.1.*

6.1.6.5 Extended: Trusted Update (FPT_TUD_EXT.1)

- FPT_TUD_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall provide authorized administrators the ability to query the current version of the TOE firmware/software.
- FPT_TUD_EXT.1.2** The TSF shall provide authorized administrators the ability to initiate updates to TOE firmware/software.
- FPT_TUD_EXT.1.3** The TSF shall provide a means to verify firmware/software updates to the TOE using a digital signature mechanism and **no other functions** prior to installing those updates.

TSS Link: *TSS for FPT_TUD_EXT.1.*

Application Note: The HP Inc. Software Depot kiosk provides a SHA2-256 published hash of the update image and a Windows OS utility program that can be downloaded and used to verify the hash. Once downloaded, the update image can be verified on a separate computer prior to installation on the TOE using the published hash and the Windows OS utility program. Because the published hash verification is not performed by the TSF, the SHA2-256 published hash verification method is excluded from this SFR.

6.1.7 TOE access (FTA)

6.1.7.1 TSF-initiated termination (FTA_SSL.3)

- FTA_SSL.3.1** The TSF shall terminate an interactive session after a **administrator-configurable amount of time of user inactivity**.

TSS Link: *TSS for FTA_SSL.3.*

6.1.8 Trusted path/channels (FTP)

6.1.8.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel (FTP_ITC.1)

- FTP_ITC.1.1** The TSF shall use **IPsec** to provide a trusted communication channel between itself and authorized IT entities supporting the following capabilities: **authentication server, DNS server, FTP server, NTS server, SharePoint server, SMB server, SMTP server, syslog server, and WINS server** that is logically distinct from other communication channels and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data from disclosure and detection of modification of the channel data.
- FTP_ITC.1.2** The TSF shall permit the TSF, or the authorized IT entities, to initiate communication via the trusted channel.
- FTP_ITC.1.3** The TSF shall initiate communication via the trusted channel for **authentication server, DNS server, FTP server, NTS server, SharePoint server, SMB server, SMTP server, syslog server, and WINS server**.

TSS Link: *TSS for FTP_ITC.1.*

6.1.8.2 Trusted path (for Administrators) (FTP_TRP.1(a))

FTP_TRP.1.1(a) The TSF shall use **IPsec** to provide a trusted communication path between itself and remote administrators that is logically distinct from other communication paths and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the communicated data from disclosure and detection of modification of the communicated data.

FTP_TRP.1.2(a) The TSF shall permit remote administrators to initiate communication via the trusted path.

FTP_TRP.1.3(a) The TSF shall require the use of the trusted path for initial administrator authentication and all remote administration actions.

TSS Link: *TSS for FTP_TRP.1(a).*

6.1.8.3 Trusted path (for Non-administrators) (FTP_TRP.1(b))

FTP_TRP.1.1(b) The TSF shall use **IPsec** to provide a trusted communication path between itself and remote users that is logically distinct from other communication paths and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the communicated data from disclosure and detection of modification of the communicated data.

FTP_TRP.1.2(b) The TSF shall permit **remote users** to initiate communication via the trusted path.

FTP_TRP.1.3(b) The TSF shall require the use of the trusted path for initial user authentication and all remote user actions.

TSS Link: *TSS for FTP_TRP.1(b).*

6.2 Security Functional Requirements Rationale

6.2.1 Coverage

The following table provides a mapping of SFR to the security objectives, showing that each security functional requirement addresses at least one security objective.

Table 34: Mapping of security functional requirements to security objectives

Security functional requirements	Objectives
FAU_GEN.1	O.AUDIT
FAU_GEN.2	O.AUDIT
FAU_STG_EXT.1	O.AUDIT
FCS_CKM.1(a)	O.COMMS_PROTECTION
FCS_CKM.1(b)	O.COMMS_PROTECTION O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION
FCS_CKM_EXT.4	O.COMMS_PROTECTION O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION

Security functional requirements	Objectives
FCS_CKM.4	O.COMMS_PROTECTION O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION
FCS_COP.1(a)	O.COMMS_PROTECTION
FCS_COP.1(b)	O.COMMS_PROTECTION O.UPDATE_VERIFICATION
FCS_COP.1(c)	O.COMMS_PROTECTION O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION O.UPDATE_VERIFICATION
FCS_COP.1(g)	O.COMMS_PROTECTION
FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1	O.COMMS_PROTECTION
FCS_KYC_EXT.1	O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION
FCS_RBG_EXT.1	O.COMMS_PROTECTION O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION
FDP_ACC.1	O.ACCESS_CONTROL O.USER_AUTHORIZATION
FDP_ACF.1	O.ACCESS_CONTROL O.USER_AUTHORIZATION
FDP_DSK_EXT.1	O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION
FDP_FXS_EXT.1	O.FAX_NET_SEPARATION
FDP_RIP.1(a)	O.IMAGE_OVERWRITE
FIA_AFL.1	O.USER_I&A
FIA_ATD.1	O.USER_AUTHORIZATION
FIA_PMG_EXT.1	O.USER_I&A
FIA_PSK_EXT.1	O.COMMS_PROTECTION
FIA_UAU.1	O.USER_I&A
FIA_UAU.7	O.USER_I&A
FIA_UID.1	O.ADMIN_ROLES, O.USER_I&A
FIA_USB.1	O.USER_I&A
FMT_MOF.1	O.ADMIN_ROLES

Security functional requirements	Objectives
FMT_MSA.1	O.ACCESS_CONTROL, O.USER_AUTHORIZATION
FMT_MSA.3	O.ACCESS_CONTROL, O.USER_AUTHORIZATION
FMT_MTD.1	O.ACCESS_CONTROL
FMT_SMF.1	O.ACCESS_CONTROL, O.ADMIN_ROLES, O.USER_AUTHORIZATION
FMT_SMR.1	O.ACCESS_CONTROL, O.ADMIN_ROLES, O.USER_AUTHORIZATION
FPT_KYP_EXT.1	O.KEY_MATERIAL
FPT_SKP_EXT.1	O.COMMS_PROTECTION
FPT_STM.1	O.AUDIT
FPT_TST_EXT.1	O.TSF_SELF_TEST
FPT_TUD_EXT.1	O.UPDATE_VERIFICATION
FTA_SSL.3	O.USER_I&A
FTP_ITC.1	O.AUDIT O.COMMS_PROTECTION
FTP_TRP.1(a)	O.COMMS_PROTECTION
FTP_TRP.1(b)	O.COMMS_PROTECTION

6.2.2 Sufficiency

The following rationale provides justification for each security objective for the TOE, showing that the security functional requirements are suitable to meet and achieve the security objectives.

Table 35: Security objectives for the TOE rationale

Security objectives	SFR	Relationship	Rationale
O.USER_I&A	FIA_AFL.1	Supports	This SFR protects the authentication function by limiting the number of unauthorized authentication attempts that can be made, thereby reducing the likelihood of impersonation.

Security objectives	SFR	Relationship	Rationale
	FIA_PMG_EXT.1	Satisfies	This SFR protects the authentication function by providing for strong credentials that are difficult to guess or derive.
	FIA_UAU.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the TOE functions that can be performed without authentication and the functions that require authentication for use.
	FIA_UAU.7	Satisfies	This SFR protects the authentication function by hiding the authentication credential as it is being input.
	FIA_UID.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the TOE functions that can be performed without identification and the functions that require identification for use.
	FIA_USB.1	Satisfies	This requirement provides assurance that an identified user is associated with attributes that govern their authorizations to the TSF upon successful authentication to the TOE.
	FTA_SSL.3	Satisfies	This SFR helps prevent User or Administrator impersonation by terminating unattended sessions.
O.ACCESS_CONTROL	FDP_ACC.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the access control policy that is used to protect access to User Data and TSF Data.
	FDP_ACF.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the specific rule-set that constitutes the access control policy, identifying the conditions under which access to resources, functions, and data are authorized or denied."
	FMT_MSA.1	Supports	The management of the product configuration, security settings, and user attributes and authorizations is critical to maintaining operational security. These management functions, as a group, provide for the ability of authorized administrators to configure the system, add and delete users, grant user-specific authorizations to system data, resources, and functions, introduce code (e.g., updates) into the
	FMT_MSA.3	Supports	
	FMT_MTD.1	Supports	
	FMT_SMF.1	Supports	
	FMT_SMR.1	Supports	

Security objectives	SFR	Relationship	Rationale
			system, and assign users to roles. Additionally, the SFRs also require that management functions be limited to users who have been explicitly authorized to perform management functions.
O.USER_AUTHORIZATION	FDP_ACC.1	Supports	This SFR enforces User Access Control SFP on subjects, objects, and operations in accordance with user authorization.
	FDP_ACF.1	Supports	This SFR enforces the User Access Control SFP to objects based on attributes in accordance with user authorization.
	FIA_ATD.1	Supports	This SFR defines the attributes that are associated with Users that can be used to define their authorizations.
	FMT_MSA.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the authorizations that are required to access data that is protected by the TSF.
	FMT_MSA.3	Satisfies	This SFR defines the default security posture for enforcement of the access control policy that governs access to data that is protected by the TSF.
	FMT_SMF.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the management functions provided by the TOE that can be used to define User authorizations.
	FMT_SMR.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines administrative roles that can be used to define authorizations to groups of Users.
O.ADMIN_ROLES	FIA_UID.1	Supports	This SFR defines the TOE management functions that can be accessed without requiring Administrator authorization.
	FMT_MOF.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the authorizations that are required for Administrators to access TOE functions.
	FMT_SMF.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the administrative functions that are provided by the TSF.
	FMT_SMR.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the different roles that can be assigned to Administrators for the

Security objectives	SFR	Relationship	Rationale
			purposes of determining authentication and authorization.
O.UPDATE_VERIFICATION	FCS_COP.1(b)	Selection	This SFR defines the digital signature service(s) used to verify the authenticity TOE updates.
	FCS_COP.1(c)	Selection	This SFR defines the hashing algorithm(s) used to verify the integrity of TOE updates.
	FPT_TUD_EXT.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the ability of the TOE to be updated and the method(s) by which the updates are known to be trusted.
O.TSF_SELF_TEST	FPT_TST_EXT.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the ability of the TSF to perform self-tests which assert the security properties of the TOE.
O.COMMS_PROTECTION	FCS_CKM.1(a)	Satisfies	This SFR defines the use of secure algorithms for key pair generation that can be used for key transport during protected communications.
	FCS_CKM.1(b)	Satisfies	This SFR defines the use of secure algorithms for key generation that can be used for protection communications.
	FCS_CKM.4	Supports	This SFR defines the method of data erasure used by FCS_CKM_EXT.4 that provides assurance that cryptographic keys that need to be erased cannot be recovered.
	FCS_CKM_EXT.4	Supports	This SFR ensures that residual cryptographic data cannot be used to compromise protected communications.
	FCS_COP.1(a)	Satisfies	This SFR defines the use of a secure symmetric key algorithm that can be used for protected communications.
	FCS_COP.1(b)	Satisfies	This SFR defines the digital signature services(s) used for protected communications.
	FCS_COP.1(c)	Selection	This mapping is missing from [HCDPP] Table 17. This SFR defines the hashing algorithm(s) used to condition the IPsec text-based pre-shared keys.

Security objectives	SFR	Relationship	Rationale
	FCS_COP.1(g)	Satisfies	This SFR defines the use of a secure HMAC algorithm that can be used for protected communications.
	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1	Selection	This SFR defines secure communications protocols that can be used to protect the transmission of security-relevant data.
	FCS_RBG_EXT.1	Supports	This SFR supports protected communications by defining a secure method of random bit generation that allows cryptographic functions to operate with their theoretical maximum strengths.
	FIA_PSK_EXT.1	Selection	This SFR defines the use of pre-shared keys in IPsec which allows for the secure implementation of that protocol.
	FPT_SKP_EXT.1	Satisfies	This SFR prevents the compromise of protected communications by ensuring that secret cryptographic data is protected against unauthorized access.
	FTP_ITC.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the interfaces over which protected communications are required and the methods used to protect the communications used to transit those interfaces.
	FTP_TRP.1(a)	Satisfies	This SFR defines the protected communications path that is used to secure Administrator interaction with the TOE.
	FTP_TRP.1(b)	Satisfies	This SFR defines the protected communications path that is used to secure user interaction with the TOE.
O.AUDIT	FAU_GEN.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the auditable events for which the TOE generates audit data and the fields that are included in each audit record.
	FAU_GEN.2	Satisfies	This SFR defines the ability of the TOE to apply attribution to all activities performed by a user or Administrator.
	FAU_STG_EXT.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the ability of the TSF to transmit generated audit data to an external entity using a protected channel.

Security objectives	SFR	Relationship	Rationale
	FPT_STM.1	Supports	This SFR ensures that audit data is labeled with accurate timestamps.
	FTP_ITC.1	Supports	This SFR defines the protected communications channel(s) over which audit data can be transmitted.
O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION	FCS_CKM.1(b)	Selection	This SFR defines the use of secure algorithms for key generation that can be used for storage encryption.
	FCS_CKM_EXT.4	Supports	This SFR helps define the requirements for the proper destruction of cryptographic keys in order to ensure that stored data is unrecoverable should the storage device(s) be separated from the TOE.
	FCS_COP.1(c)	Not supported	This PP dependency is not implemented by the TOE. Instead, the TOE uses an SED as the field-replaceable nonvolatile storage device to fulfill this requirement.
	FCS_KYC_EXT.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the key chaining method used by the TOE to provide multiple layers of security for key material.
	FCS_RBG_EXT.1	Supports	This SFR defines the random bit generation algorithm used to ensure that the TOE's cryptographic algorithms function with the theoretical maximum level of security.
	FDP_DSK_EXT.1	Satisfies	This SFR requires the TSF to encrypt the data that is stored to disk.
O.KEY_MATERIAL	FPT_KYP_EXT.1	Satisfies	This SFR defines the ability of the TSF from storing unprotected key data in insecure locations.
O.FAX_NET_SEPARATION	FDP_FXS_EXT.1	Satisfies	This SFR enforces separation of the fax interface by preventing the use of this interface for all non-fax communications.
O.IMAGE_OVERWRITE	FDP_RIP.1(a)	Satisfies	This SFR defines the ability of the TSF to overwrite user document data upon its deallocation.

6.2.3 Security requirements dependency analysis

The following table demonstrates the dependencies of the SFRs modeled in CC Part 2, [HCDPP] and [HCDPP-ERRATA], and how the SFRs for the TOE resolve those dependencies.

Table 36: TOE SFR dependency analysis

Security functional requirement	Dependencies	Resolution
FAU_GEN.1	FPT_STM.1	FPT_STM.1
FAU_GEN.2	FAU_GEN.1	FAU_GEN.1
	FIA_UID.1	FIA_UID.1
FAU_STG_EXT.1	FAU_GEN.1	FAU_GEN.1
	FTP_ITC.1	FTP_ITC.1
FCS_CKM.1(a)	[FCS_CKM.2 or FCS_COP.1]	FCS_COP.1(b) resolves, but FCS_COP.1(i) is excluded from the ST. See Section 6.2.4 for exclusion rationale.
	FCS_CKM.4	This dependency has been removed by the PP.
	FCS_CKM_EXT.4	FCS_CKM_EXT.4
FCS_CKM.1(b)	[FCS_CKM.2 or FCS_COP.1]	FCS_COP.1(a) FCS_COP.1(g)
	FCS_CKM.4	This dependency has been removed by the PP.
	FCS_CKM_EXT.4	FCS_CKM_EXT.4
	FCS_RBG_EXT.1	FCS_RBG_EXT.1
FCS_CKM_EXT.4	FCS_CKM.1	FCS_CKM.1(a) FCS_CKM.1(b)
	FCS_CKM.4	FCS_CKM.4
FCS_CKM.4	[FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2 or FCS_CKM.1]	FCS_CKM.1(a) FCS_CKM.1(b)
FCS_COP.1(a)	[FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2 or FCS_CKM.1]	FCS_CKM.1(b)
	FCS_CKM.4	This dependency has been removed by the PP.
	FCS_CKM_EXT.4	FCS_CKM_EXT.4

Security functional requirement	Dependencies	Resolution
FCS_COP.1(b)	[FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2 or FCS_CKM.1]	This dependency is unresolved because RSA keys are imported by the TOE via X.509v3 certificates, not generated by the TOE. FCS_CKM.1(a) is for the generation of DH and DSA keys.
	FCS_CKM.4	This dependency has been removed by the PP.
	FCS_CKM_EXT.4	FCS_CKM_EXT.4
FCS_COP.1(c)	[FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2 or FCS_CKM.1]	This dependency has been removed by the PP.
	FCS_CKM.4	This dependency has been removed by the PP.
FCS_COP.1(g)	[FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2 or FCS_CKM.1]	FCS_CKM.1(b)
	FCS_CKM.4	This dependency has been removed by the PP.
	FCS_CKM_EXT.4	FCS_CKM_EXT.4
FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1	FCS_CKM.1	FCS_CKM.1(a)
	FCS_COP.1	FCS_COP.1(a) FCS_COP.1(b) FCS_COP.1(c) FCS_COP.1(g)
	FCS_RBG_EXT.1	FCS_RBG_EXT.1
	FIA_PSK_EXT.1	FIA_PSK_EXT.1
FCS_KYC_EXT.1	FCS_COP.1	FCS_COP.1(e), FCS_COP.1(f), and FCS_COP.1(i) are excluded from the ST. See Section 6.2.4 for exclusion rationale.
	FCS_KDF_EXT.1	FCS_KDF_EXT.1 is excluded from the ST. See Section 6.2.4 for exclusion rationale.
	FCS_SMC_EXT.1	FCS_SMC_EXT.1 is excluded from the ST. See Section 6.2.4 for exclusion rationale.
FCS_RBG_EXT.1	No dependencies	
FDP_ACC.1	FDP_ACF.1	FDP_ACF.1
FDP_ACF.1	FDP_ACC.1	FDP_ACC.1

Security functional requirement	Dependencies	Resolution
	FMT_MSA.3	FMT_MSA.3
FDP_DSK_EXT.1	FCS_COP.1	FCS_COP.1(d) is excluded from the ST. See Section 6.2.4 for exclusion rationale.
FDP_FXS_EXT.1	No dependencies	
FDP_RIP.1(a)	No dependencies	
FIA_AFL.1	FIA_UAU.1	FIA_UAU.1
FIA_ATD.1	No dependencies	
FIA_PMG_EXT.1	No dependencies	
FIA_PSK_EXT.1	FCS_RBG_EXT.1	FCS_RBG_EXT.1
FIA_UAU.1	FIA_UID.1	FIA_UID.1
FIA_UAU.7	FIA_UAU.1	FIA_UAU.1
FIA_UID.1	No dependencies	
FIA_USB.1	FIA_ATD.1	FIA_ATD.1
FMT_MOF.1	FMT_SMR.1	FMT_SMR.1
	FMT_SMF.1	FMT_SMF.1
FMT_MSA.1	[FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1]	FDP_ACC.1
	FMT_SMR.1	FMT_SMR.1
	FMT_SMF.1	FMT_SMF.1
FMT_MSA.3	FMT_MSA.1	FMT_MSA.1
	FMT_SMR.1	FMT_SMR.1
FMT_MTD.1	FMT_SMR.1	FMT_SMR.1
	FMT_SMF.1	FMT_SMF.1
FMT_SMF.1	No dependencies	
FMT_SMR.1	FIA_UID.1	FIA_UID.1
FPT_KYP_EXT.1	No dependencies	
FPT_SKP_EXT.1	No dependencies	
FPT_STM.1	No dependencies	

Security functional requirement	Dependencies	Resolution
FPT_TST_EXT.1	No dependencies	
FPT_TUD_EXT.1	FCS_COP.1	FCS_COP.1(b) FCS_COP.1(c)
FTA_SSL.3	No dependencies	
FTP_ITC.1	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1
FTP_TRP.1(a)	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1
FTP_TRP.1(b)	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1

6.2.4 HCDPP SFR reconciliation

This ST excludes the follow SFRs found in [HCDPP].

Table 37: HCDPP SFRs excluded from the ST

Excluded PP SFR	Type	Rationale
FAU_SAR.1	Optional	Optional.
FAU_SAR.2	Optional	Optional.
FAU_STG.1	Optional	Optional.
FAU_STG.4	Optional	Optional.
FCS_COP.1(d)	Selection-based	O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION: FCS_COP.1(d) is for AES data encryption and decryption of stored data on field-replaceable nonvolatile storage devices by the TOE. The TOE does not perform AES data encryption and decryption of stored data on field-replaceable nonvolatile storage devices. Instead, the TOE uses an SED for data encryption and decryption. The SED performs its own data encryption and decryption.
FCS_COP.1(e)	Selection-based	O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION: FCS_COP.1(e) is defined in [HCDPP] for key wrapping within the key chain. The TOE does not use key wrapping in the key chain; thus, key wrapping is not selected in FCS_KYC_EXT.1.
FCS_COP.1(f)	Selection-based	O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION: FCS_COP.1(f) is defined in [HCDPP] for AES encryption of keys in the key chain. The TOE does not use symmetric encryption algorithms to encrypt keys in the key chain; thus, AES key encryption is not selected in FCS_KYC_EXT.1.

Excluded PP SFR	Type	Rationale
FCS_COP.1(h)	Selection-based	O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION : FCS_COP.1(h) is defined in [HCDPP] for keyed-hash message authentication algorithms for creating the BEV. The TOE does not use HMACs to create the BEV.
FCS_COP.1(i)	Selection-based	O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION : FCS_COP.1(i) is defined in [HCDPP] for key transport encryption within the key chain. The TOE does not use key transport encryption in the key chain; thus, key transport is not selected in FCS_KYC_EXT.1 .
FCS_HTTPS_EXT.1	Selection-based	All communication channels are protected by IPsec. See FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1 for more information.
FCS_KDF_EXT.1	Selection-based	O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION : FCS_KDF_EXT.1 is defined in [HCDPP] for generating intermediate keys. The TOE does not generate or use intermediate keys related to O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION .
FCS_PCC_EXT.1	Selection-based	O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION : FCS_PCC_EXT.1 is defined in [HCDPP] for cryptographic password construction and conditioning of the BEV. The TOE generates the BEV from the RBG instead of from a password.
FCS_SMC_EXT.1	Selection-based	O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION : FCS_SMC_EXT.1 is defined in [HCDPP] for submask combining. The TOE does not use submask combining in the key chain; thus, submask combining is not selected in FCS_KYC_EXT.1 .
FCS_SNI_EXT.1	Selection-based	O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION : FCS_SNI_EXT.1 is defined in [HCDPP] for generation of salts, nonces, and initialization vectors when manual entry of a drive encryption passphrase is supported by the TOE. The TOE does not support manual entry of a drive encryption passphrase.
FCS_SSH_EXT.1	Selection-based	All communication channels are protected by IPsec. See FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1 for more information.
FCS_TLS_EXT.1	Selection-based	All communication channels are protected by IPsec. See FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1 for more information.
FDP_RIP.1(b)	Optional	O.PURGE_DATA is not supported in the evaluated configuration.

6.3 Security Assurance Requirements

The security assurance requirements (SARs) for the TOE correspond to the following assurance components: ASE_CCL.1, ASE_ECD.1, ASE_INT.1, ASE_OBJ.1, ASE_REQ.1, ASE_SPD.1, ASE_TSS.1, ADV_FSP.1, AGD_OPE.1, AGD_PRE.1, ALC_CMC.1, ALC_CMS.1, ATE_IND.1 and AVA_VAN.1.

The following table shows the SARs, and the operations performed on the components according to CC part 3: iteration (Iter.), refinement (Ref.), assignment (Ass.) and selection (Sel.).

Table 38: Security assurance requirements

Security assurance class	Security assurance requirement	Source	Operations			
			Iter.	Ref.	Ass.	Sel.
ASE Security Target evaluation	ASE_CCL.1 Conformance claims	CC Part 3	No	No	No	No
	ASE_ECD.1 Extended components definition	CC Part 3	No	No	No	No
	ASE_INT.1 ST introduction	CC Part 3	No	No	No	No
	ASE_OBJ.1 Security objectives for the operational environment	CC Part 3	No	No	No	No
	ASE_REQ.1 Stated security requirements	CC Part 3	No	No	No	No
	ASE_SPD.1 Security problem definition	CC Part 3	No	No	No	No
	ASE_TSS.1 TOE summary specification	CC Part 3	No	No	No	No
ADV Development	ADV_FSP.1 Basic functional specification	CC Part 3	No	No	No	No
AGD Guidance documents	AGD_OPE.1 Operational user guidance	CC Part 3	No	No	No	No
	AGD_PRE.1 Preparative procedures	CC Part 3	No	No	No	No
ALC Life-cycle support	ALC_CMC.1 Labelling of the TOE	CC Part 3	No	No	No	No
	ALC_CMS.1 TOE CM coverage	CC Part 3	No	No	No	No
ATE Tests	ATE_IND.1 Independent testing - conformance	CC Part 3	No	No	No	No
AVA Vulnerability assessment	AVA_VAN.1 Vulnerability survey	CC Part 3	No	No	No	No

6.4 Security Assurance Requirements Rationale

The rationale for choosing these security assurance requirements is that they define a minimum security baseline that is based on the anticipated threat level of the attacker, the security of the Operational Environment in which the TOE is deployed, and the relative value of the TOE itself. The assurance activities throughout the PP are used to provide tailored guidance on the specific expectations for completing the security assurance requirements.

7 TOE Summary Specification

7.1 TOE Security Functionality

The TSS page numbers in Table 39 provide a quick index to each SFR's TSS entry in Table 40 of the next section.

Table 39: TSS index

SFR	TSS page	SFR	TSS page	SFR	TSS page	SFR	TSS page
FAU_GEN.1	90	FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1	108	FIA_PSK_EXT.1	125	FPT_KYP_EXT.1	141
FAU_GEN.2	95	FCS_KYC_EXT.1	112	FIA_UAU.1	125	FPT_SKP_EXT.1	141
FAU_STG_EXT.1	95	FCS_RBG_EXT.1	113	FIA_UAU.7	129	FPT_STM.1	142
FCS_CKM.1(a)	96	FDP_ACC.1	114	FIA_UID.1	130	FPT_TST_EXT.1	143
FCS_CKM.1(b)	98	FDP_ACF.1	114	FIA_USB.1	131	FPT_TUD_EXT.1	143
FCS_CKM_EXT.4	99	FDP_DSK_EXT.1	118	FMT_MOF.1	134	FTA_SSL.3	144
FCS_CKM.4	99	FDP_FXS_EXT.1	119	FMT_MSA.1	135	FTP_ITC.1	145
FCS_COP.1(a)	102	FDP_RIP.1(a)	121	FMT_MSA.3	137	FTP_TRP.1(a)	146
FCS_COP.1(b)	102	FIA_AFL.1	122	FMT_MTD.1	137	FTP_TRP.1(b)	146
FCS_COP.1(c)	104	FIA_ATD.1	123	FMT_SMF.1	139		
FCS_COP.1(g)	107	FIA_PMG_EXT.1	124	FMT_SMR.1	140		

The list of CAVP certificates is in Section 7.1.2 on page 147. The CAVP certificates are also listed with each SFR description in the following section.

7.1.1 TOE SFR compliance rationale

Table 40 provides the rationale for how the TOE complies with each of the SFRs in Section 6.1. Table 40 uses the following abbreviations.

- AA—Assurance Activity
- n/a—Not applicable
- Op env—Operational environment for CAVP certificates
- Resp—Response

Table 40: TOE SFR compliance rationale

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale											
<p>FAU_GEN.1 (Audit generation)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.AUDIT</p> <p>Summary: The TOE generates audit records for the audit events specified in [HCDPP]. It also generates audit records for additional vendor-specific audit events defined in FAU_GEN.1.</p> <p>To generate the proper set of audit events, the TOE's enhanced security event logging must be enabled. For information on this, see the TSS for FMT_MOF.1.</p> <p>The complete audit record format and audit record details are provided in the [CCECG] in chapter 7 <i>Enhanced security event logging messages</i> in section <i>Syslog messages</i>. The [CCECG] groups the events into event categories in the section <i>Syslog messages</i>.</p> <p>Table 41 provides a mapping of the [CCECG] event categories to the events defined in FAU_GEN.1. (The ST author's intent is to not consume 30 pages of the ST by repeating the audit events listed in the [CCECG], but to refer the ST reader to the appropriate category of events in the [CCECG] that map to the events defined in FAU_GEN.1.)</p> <p>Each audit record includes the date and time of the event, type of event, subject identity (if applicable), and the outcome (success or failure) of the event.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Table 41: TOE audit records</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Auditable event</th> <th>Additional information</th> <th>CCECG "Syslog messages" category and records</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Start-up and shutdown of the audit functions</td> <td>None</td> <td> <u>Enhanced security event logging:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auditing was started during boot up • Auditing was stopped using EWS • Auditing was restarted using EWS </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Job completion</td> <td>Type of job</td> <td> <u>Job completion:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Copy job completion • Email job completion • Save (scan) to SharePoint job completion • Save (scan) to Network Folder job completion • Fax Send job completion • Fax Receive job completion • Save to Device Memory job completion </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>			Auditable event	Additional information	CCECG "Syslog messages" category and records	Start-up and shutdown of the audit functions	None	<u>Enhanced security event logging:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auditing was started during boot up • Auditing was stopped using EWS • Auditing was restarted using EWS 	Job completion	Type of job	<u>Job completion:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Copy job completion • Email job completion • Save (scan) to SharePoint job completion • Save (scan) to Network Folder job completion • Fax Send job completion • Fax Receive job completion • Save to Device Memory job completion
Auditable event	Additional information	CCECG "Syslog messages" category and records										
Start-up and shutdown of the audit functions	None	<u>Enhanced security event logging:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auditing was started during boot up • Auditing was stopped using EWS • Auditing was restarted using EWS 										
Job completion	Type of job	<u>Job completion:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Copy job completion • Email job completion • Save (scan) to SharePoint job completion • Save (scan) to Network Folder job completion • Fax Send job completion • Fax Receive job completion • Save to Device Memory job completion 										

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale		
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Retrieve from Device Memory job completion (Print from job storage) Job Notification completion Print job completion
	Unsuccessful user authentication	<p>[HCDPP]:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> None 	<p><u>Local device sign in:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Local Device sign-in method failed <p><u>Windows sign in:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Windows sign-in method failed for the specified user <p><u>LDAP sign in:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> LDAP sign-in method failed for the specified user
	Unsuccessful user identification	<p>[HCDPP]:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> None <p>Vendor:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Attempted user identity 	Same categories and records as the “Unsuccessful user authentication” auditable events
	Use of the management functions	None	<p><u>Device administrator password:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Device Administrator Password modified <p><u>Account lockout policy:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Account Lockout Policy enabled Account Lockout Policy disabled Account Lockout Policy setting modified <p><u>Minimum password length settings:</u></p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale		
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Minimum Password Length Policy setting modified <hr/> <p><u>Windows Sign In:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Windows Sign In enabled • Windows Sign In disabled • Windows Sign In configuration modified <hr/> <p><u>LDAP Sign In:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LDAP Sign In enabled • LDAP Sign In disabled • LDAP Sign In configuration modified <hr/> <p><u>“Allow users to choose alternate sign-in methods at the product control panel” function:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sign In and Permission Policy settings modified <hr/> <p><u>Session inactivity timeout:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Control Panel Inactivity Timeout Changed • EWS Session Timeout modified <hr/> <p><u>Permission set associations:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Default Permission set for sign-in method modified • User to Permission Set Relationship added • User to Permission Set Relationship deleted • Group to Permission Set Relationship added • Group to Permission Set Relationship deleted <hr/> <p><u>Custom permission sets:</u></p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale		
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Permission Set added • Permission Set modified • Permission Set copied • Permission Set deleted <hr/> <p><u>Permissions associated with permission sets:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Permission Set modified <hr/> <p><u>IPsec pre-shared keys:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IPsec policy added • IPsec policy modified • IPsec policy deleted <hr/> <p><u>CA and identity certificates used for IPsec authentication:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Device CA certificate installed • Device CA certificate deleted • Device Identity certificate and private key installed • Device Identity certificate for network identity selected • Device Identity certificate deleted <hr/> <p><u>Enhanced security event logging:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CCC logging started • CCC logging stopped <hr/> <p><u>NTS configuration data:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Date and Time configuration modified <hr/> <p><u>Image overwrite option in “Managing Temporary Job Files”:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File Erase Mode for erasing temporary job files modified
	Modifications to the group of users that are part of a role	None	<p><u>Network user to permission set relationships:</u></p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale		
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User to Permission Set Relationship added • User to Permission Set Relationship deleted <hr/> <u>Network group to permission set relationships:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Group to Permission Set Relationship added • Group to Permission Set Relationship deleted
	Changes to the time	<u>[HCDPP]:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None Vendor: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New date and time • Old date and time 	<u>System time:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • System time changed
	Failure to establish session (trusted channel/path)	<u>[HCDPP]:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reason for failure Vendor: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Non-TOE endpoint of connection (e.g., IP address) 	<u>IKEv1 phase 1 negotiations:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IKEv1 phase 1 negotiation failed initiated by the client computer • IKEv1 phase 1 negotiation failed initiated by the local device (TOE) <hr/> <u>IKEv1 phase 2 negotiations:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IKEv1 phase 2 negotiation failed initiated by the client computer • IKEv1 phase 2 negotiation failed initiated by the local device (TOE)
	Locking an account	User name associated with account	<u>Account entered lockout (protected) mode:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Account Entered Lockout Mode

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale		
	Unlocking an account	User name associated with account	<u>Account exited lockout (protected) mode:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Account Exited Lockout Mode
AA	<i>The evaluator shall check the TOE Summary Specification (TSS) to ensure that auditable events and its recorded information are consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i>		
Resp	Table 20 contains the auditable events for FAU_GEN.1. Table 41 contains the TSS auditable events and records.		
FAU_GEN.2 (Audit user identification)	<p>Objective(s): O.AUDIT</p> <p>Summary: Events resulting from actions of identified users are associated with the identity of the user that caused the event.</p>		
AA	<i>The Assurance Activities for FAU_GEN.1 address this SFR.</i>		
Resp	n/a		
FAU_STG_EX T.1 (Audit trail storage)	<p>Objective(s): O.AUDIT</p> <p>Summary: The TOE connects and sends audit records to an external syslog server for long-term storage and audit review. It uses the syslog protocol to transmit the records over an IPsec channel. The IPsec channel provides protection of the transmitted data and assured identification of both endpoints.</p> <p>The TOE contains two in-memory audit record message queues. One queue is for network audit records (e.g., IKEv1 phase 1 negotiation events) generated and maintained by the Jetdirect Inside firmware, and the other queue is for HCD audit records (e.g., Control Panel Sign In events) generated and maintained by the System firmware. These in-memory message queues are not accessible through any TOE interface and, thus, are protected against unauthorized access.</p> <p>The network queue holds up to 15 audit records. New audit records are discarded when the network queue becomes full. The HCD queue holds up to 1000 audit records. New audit records replace the oldest audit records when the HCD queue becomes full.</p> <p>The TOE establishes a persistent connection to the external syslog server. An audit record is generated, added to a queue, immediately sent from the queue to the syslog server and written to the internal log file, then removed from the queue once the record has been successfully received by the syslog server.</p> <p>If the connection is interrupted (e.g., network outage), the TOE will make 5 attempts to reestablish the connection where each attempt lasts for approximately 30 seconds. If all attempts fail, the TOE will repeat the reestablishment process again when a new audit record is added to the HCD queue. Once the connection is reestablished, the records from both queues are immediately sent to the syslog server.</p>		

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale								
	<p>If the TOE is powered off, any audit records remaining in the two in-memory messages queues at the time of power-off will be discarded.</p> <p>Note: The TOE also stores up to 2500 audit records in an internal log file on the SED replacing the oldest audit records with new audit records when the log file becomes full. These audit records can be exported via the EWS interface. In the evaluated configuration, access to the audit records export function is restricted to U.ADMIN.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure it describes the means by which the audit data are transferred to the external audit server, and how the trusted channel is provided. Testing of the trusted channel mechanism will be performed as specified in the associated assurance activities for the particular trusted channel mechanism.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>The TOE uses the syslog protocol over an IPsec channel to transfer audit data to the external audit server.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure it describes the amount of audit data that are stored locally; what happens when the local audit data store is full; and how these records are protected against unauthorized access. The evaluator shall also examine the operational guidance to determine that it describes the relationship between the local audit data and the audit data that are sent to the audit log server. For example, when an audit event is generated, is it simultaneously sent to the external server and the local store, or is the local store used as a buffer and "cleared" periodically by sending the data to the audit server.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td> <p>There are two in-memory audit record message queues: network queue and HCD queue. The network queue holds up to 15 records and, if full, discards new records. The HCD queue holds up to 1000 records and, if full, replaces the oldest records with new records. When an audit record is added to a queue, it is immediately sent to the external syslog server (assuming a connection to the server exists) and written to the internal log file. Once an audit record is sent to the external syslog server, it is removed from the queue.</p> <p>No TOE interface is provided to access the two in-memory queues; thus, no unauthorized access is possible.</p> <p>Using the EWS or REST interface, U.ADMIN can export the audit records in the internal log file. Access to the audit records export function is restricted to U.ADMIN.</p> </td> </tr> </table>	AA	<i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure it describes the means by which the audit data are transferred to the external audit server, and how the trusted channel is provided. Testing of the trusted channel mechanism will be performed as specified in the associated assurance activities for the particular trusted channel mechanism.</i>	Resp	The TOE uses the syslog protocol over an IPsec channel to transfer audit data to the external audit server.	AA	<i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure it describes the amount of audit data that are stored locally; what happens when the local audit data store is full; and how these records are protected against unauthorized access. The evaluator shall also examine the operational guidance to determine that it describes the relationship between the local audit data and the audit data that are sent to the audit log server. For example, when an audit event is generated, is it simultaneously sent to the external server and the local store, or is the local store used as a buffer and "cleared" periodically by sending the data to the audit server.</i>	Resp	<p>There are two in-memory audit record message queues: network queue and HCD queue. The network queue holds up to 15 records and, if full, discards new records. The HCD queue holds up to 1000 records and, if full, replaces the oldest records with new records. When an audit record is added to a queue, it is immediately sent to the external syslog server (assuming a connection to the server exists) and written to the internal log file. Once an audit record is sent to the external syslog server, it is removed from the queue.</p> <p>No TOE interface is provided to access the two in-memory queues; thus, no unauthorized access is possible.</p> <p>Using the EWS or REST interface, U.ADMIN can export the audit records in the internal log file. Access to the audit records export function is restricted to U.ADMIN.</p>
AA	<i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure it describes the means by which the audit data are transferred to the external audit server, and how the trusted channel is provided. Testing of the trusted channel mechanism will be performed as specified in the associated assurance activities for the particular trusted channel mechanism.</i>								
Resp	The TOE uses the syslog protocol over an IPsec channel to transfer audit data to the external audit server.								
AA	<i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure it describes the amount of audit data that are stored locally; what happens when the local audit data store is full; and how these records are protected against unauthorized access. The evaluator shall also examine the operational guidance to determine that it describes the relationship between the local audit data and the audit data that are sent to the audit log server. For example, when an audit event is generated, is it simultaneously sent to the external server and the local store, or is the local store used as a buffer and "cleared" periodically by sending the data to the audit server.</i>								
Resp	<p>There are two in-memory audit record message queues: network queue and HCD queue. The network queue holds up to 15 records and, if full, discards new records. The HCD queue holds up to 1000 records and, if full, replaces the oldest records with new records. When an audit record is added to a queue, it is immediately sent to the external syslog server (assuming a connection to the server exists) and written to the internal log file. Once an audit record is sent to the external syslog server, it is removed from the queue.</p> <p>No TOE interface is provided to access the two in-memory queues; thus, no unauthorized access is possible.</p> <p>Using the EWS or REST interface, U.ADMIN can export the audit records in the internal log file. Access to the audit records export function is restricted to U.ADMIN.</p>								
<p>FCS_CKM.1(a) (Asymmetric key generation)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.COMMS_PROTECTION</p> <p>Summary: For IPsec IKEv1 KAS FFC, the TOE uses the DH key pair generation algorithm to establish a protected communication channel. A portion of the DH key generation algorithm is the same as the DSA key generation algorithm. Because of this, the CAVP testing for DH contains a prerequisite for testing the DSA key generation function used by the DH key generation function. Thus, DSA key generation is a prerequisite for and included as part of KAS FFC.</p>								

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale
	<p>For IPsec IKEv1 KAS ECC, the TOE uses the ECDH key pair generation algorithm to establish a protected communication channel. A portion of the ECDH key generation algorithm is the same as the ECDSA key generation algorithm. Because of this, the CAVP testing for ECDH contains a prerequisite for testing the ECDSA key generation function used by the ECDH key generation function. Thus, ECDSA key generation is a prerequisite for and included as part of KAS ECC.</p> <p>For KAS FFC, the TOE uses the DH ephemeral (dhEphem) scheme with SHA2-256 for key establishment as per the NIST Special Publication (SP) [SP800-56A-Rev3] standard Section 5.5.1.1 "FFC Domain Parameter Generation" tests FB and FC, Section 5.6.1.1 "FFC Key-Pair Generation," and Section 6.1.2.1 "dhEphem, C(2e, 0s, FFC DH) Scheme." The DH/DSA key pair generation supports the following values as per the [FIPS186-4] standard.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • L=2048, N=224 • L=2048, N=256 • L=3072, N=256 <p>For KAS ECC, the TOE uses the ECDH ephemeral unified scheme with the following curve and SHA algorithm combinations for key establishment as per the NIST SP [SP800-56A-Rev3] standard Section 5.5.1.2 "ECC Domain Parameter Generation" tests EC, ED, and EE, Section 5.6.1.2 "ECC Key-Pair Generation," and Section 6.1.2.2 "(Cofactor) Ephemeral Unified Model, C(2e, 0s, ECC CDH)."</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • EC: P-256, SHA2-256 • ED: P-384, SHA2-384 • EE: P-521, SHA2-512 <p>The ECDH/ECDSA key pair generation supports the P-256, P-384, and P-521 curves as per the [FIPS186-4] standard.</p> <p>For both KAS FFC and KAS ECC, any necessary key material is obtained using the QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module CTR_DRBG(AES) defined in FCS_RBG_EXT.1.</p> <p>The TOE does not implement the key derivation function (KDF) defined in the NIST SP [SP800-56A-Rev3] standard. Instead, the TOE implements the IPsec IKEv1 KDF. The IKEv1 KDF was not tested through the CAVP as CAVP testing of this KDF was considered optional by NIAP at the time of this evaluation.</p> <p>The TOE uses RSA-based X.509v3 certificates for IPsec/IKEv1 authentication using the IPsec IKEv1 digital signature authentication method. (See FCS_COP.1(b) for RSA digital signature generation and verification.) The TOE does not perform RSA key pair generation. Instead, the RSA certificates are generated by the Operational Environment and imported by the TOE. Therefore, RSA key pair generation is not claimed in FCS_CKM.1(a)</p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale																																		
	<p style="text-align: center;">Table 42: Asymmetric key generation</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Usage</th> <th>Implementation</th> <th>Op env</th> <th>Algorithm</th> <th>Modes and key sizes</th> <th>CAVP cert #</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="4">IKE</td> <td rowspan="4">HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module</td> <td rowspan="4">ARM Cortex-A72</td> <td>DH (dhEphem)</td> <td>SHA2-256</td> <td>#A2049</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DSA</td> <td>L=2048, N=224; L=2048, N=256; L=3072, N=256</td> <td>#A2049</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ECDH (ephemeral unified)</td> <td>P-256, SHA2-256; P-384, SHA2-384; P-521, SHA2-512</td> <td>#A2049</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ECDSA</td> <td>P-256, P-384, P-521</td> <td>#A2049</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS contains a description of how the TSF complies with 800-56A and/or 800-56B, depending on the selections made. This description shall indicate the sections in 800-56A and/or 800-56B that are implemented by the TSF, and the evaluator shall ensure that key establishment is among those sections that the TSF claims to implement.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>The Summary section above provides the explanation.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>Any TOE-specific extensions, processing that is not included in the documents, or alternative implementations allowed by the documents that may impact the security requirements the TOE is to enforce shall be described in the TSS. The TSS may refer to the Key Management Description (KMD), described in [HCDPP] Appendix F, that may not be made available to the public.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>There are no TOE-specific extensions. As mentioned in the Summary section, the KDF used by the TOE is the IKEv1 KDF.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>						Usage	Implementation	Op env	Algorithm	Modes and key sizes	CAVP cert #	IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	ARM Cortex-A72	DH (dhEphem)	SHA2-256	#A2049	DSA	L=2048, N=224; L=2048, N=256; L=3072, N=256	#A2049	ECDH (ephemeral unified)	P-256, SHA2-256; P-384, SHA2-384; P-521, SHA2-512	#A2049	ECDSA	P-256, P-384, P-521	#A2049	AA	<i>The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS contains a description of how the TSF complies with 800-56A and/or 800-56B, depending on the selections made. This description shall indicate the sections in 800-56A and/or 800-56B that are implemented by the TSF, and the evaluator shall ensure that key establishment is among those sections that the TSF claims to implement.</i>	Resp	The Summary section above provides the explanation.	AA	<i>Any TOE-specific extensions, processing that is not included in the documents, or alternative implementations allowed by the documents that may impact the security requirements the TOE is to enforce shall be described in the TSS. The TSS may refer to the Key Management Description (KMD), described in [HCDPP] Appendix F, that may not be made available to the public.</i>	Resp	There are no TOE-specific extensions. As mentioned in the Summary section, the KDF used by the TOE is the IKEv1 KDF.
Usage	Implementation	Op env	Algorithm	Modes and key sizes	CAVP cert #																														
IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	ARM Cortex-A72	DH (dhEphem)	SHA2-256	#A2049																														
			DSA	L=2048, N=224; L=2048, N=256; L=3072, N=256	#A2049																														
			ECDH (ephemeral unified)	P-256, SHA2-256; P-384, SHA2-384; P-521, SHA2-512	#A2049																														
			ECDSA	P-256, P-384, P-521	#A2049																														
AA	<i>The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS contains a description of how the TSF complies with 800-56A and/or 800-56B, depending on the selections made. This description shall indicate the sections in 800-56A and/or 800-56B that are implemented by the TSF, and the evaluator shall ensure that key establishment is among those sections that the TSF claims to implement.</i>																																		
Resp	The Summary section above provides the explanation.																																		
AA	<i>Any TOE-specific extensions, processing that is not included in the documents, or alternative implementations allowed by the documents that may impact the security requirements the TOE is to enforce shall be described in the TSS. The TSS may refer to the Key Management Description (KMD), described in [HCDPP] Appendix F, that may not be made available to the public.</i>																																		
Resp	There are no TOE-specific extensions. As mentioned in the Summary section, the KDF used by the TOE is the IKEv1 KDF.																																		
FCS_CKM.1(b) (Symmetric key generation)	<p>Objective(s): O.COMMS_PROTECTION, O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION</p> <p>Summary: The TOE uses the HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1 CTR_DRBG(AES) defined in FCS_RBKG_EXT.1 to generate the key used for the SED's drive-lock password</p>																																		

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale																
	<p>(BEV). Table 43 shows the purpose and key sizes generated and the standards to which they conform. For information on how the TOE invokes the DRBG, see the [KMD].</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Table 43: Symmetric key generation</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Usage</th> <th>Implementation</th> <th>Purpose</th> <th>Op env</th> <th>Key size</th> <th>Standard</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Drive-lock password (BEV)</td> <td>HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1</td> <td>BEV generation</td> <td>ARM Cortex-A72</td> <td>256-bit</td> <td>No standard</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>The evaluator shall review the TSS to determine that it describes how the functionality described by FCS_RBG_EXT.1 is invoked.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>This information is provided in the [KMD].</td> </tr> </table>	Usage	Implementation	Purpose	Op env	Key size	Standard	Drive-lock password (BEV)	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	BEV generation	ARM Cortex-A72	256-bit	No standard	AA	<i>The evaluator shall review the TSS to determine that it describes how the functionality described by FCS_RBG_EXT.1 is invoked.</i>	Resp	This information is provided in the [KMD].
Usage	Implementation	Purpose	Op env	Key size	Standard												
Drive-lock password (BEV)	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	BEV generation	ARM Cortex-A72	256-bit	No standard												
AA	<i>The evaluator shall review the TSS to determine that it describes how the functionality described by FCS_RBG_EXT.1 is invoked.</i>																
Resp	This information is provided in the [KMD].																
<p>FCS_CKM_EXT.4 (Key material destruction)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.COMMS_PROTECTION, O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION</p> <p>Summary: The TOE's plaintext secret and private cryptographic keys and cryptographic critical security parameters (CSPs) are as follows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IPsec keys and key material (for O.COMMS_PROTECTION) • Drive-lock password (for O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION) <p>TSS for FCS_CKM.4 contains an accounting of the keys and key material, when these values are no longer needed, and when to expect them to be destroyed.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>The evaluator shall verify the TSS provides a high level description of what it means for keys and key material to be no longer needed and when then should be expected to be destroyed.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>TSS for FCS_CKM.4 contains the requested information on a per key basis.</td> </tr> </table>	AA	<i>The evaluator shall verify the TSS provides a high level description of what it means for keys and key material to be no longer needed and when then should be expected to be destroyed.</i>	Resp	TSS for FCS_CKM.4 contains the requested information on a per key basis.												
AA	<i>The evaluator shall verify the TSS provides a high level description of what it means for keys and key material to be no longer needed and when then should be expected to be destroyed.</i>																
Resp	TSS for FCS_CKM.4 contains the requested information on a per key basis.																
<p>FCS_CKM.4 (Key destruction)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.COMMS_PROTECTION, O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION</p> <p>Summary: As stated in the TSS for FCS_CKM_EXT.4, the TOE's plaintext secret and private cryptographic keys and cryptographic critical security parameters (CSPs) are as follows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IPsec keys and key material (for O.COMMS_PROTECTION) • SED drive-lock password (for O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION) <p>Table 44 contains the list of the IPsec volatile memory keys, their usage, their storage location, when they are no longer needed, when they are destroyed, and their destruction algorithm.</p> <p><u>Rationale for no nonvolatile key destruction</u></p> <p>Although the following keys reside in nonvolatile memory, the nonvolatile selection in the [HCDPP] FCS_CKM.4 is not selected because of the following reasons.</p>																

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale																														
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drive-lock password (BEV)—This plaintext secret used to unlock the SED is generated once by the TOE in the evaluated configuration, stored in non-field replaceable nonvolatile storage (SPI flash and EEPROM), is always needed, is not viewable from the TOE interfaces by an administrator or non-administrator, and is never modified in the evaluated configuration, thus, it is never destroyed. • IPsec Pre-shared keys—The PSKs are stored on the SED and, thus, are considered to be stored as ciphertext, not plaintext. • IPsec RSA private key—This private key is stored on the SED and, thus, is considered to be stored as ciphertext, not plaintext. <p style="text-align: center;">Table 44: TOE key destruction</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Secret type</th> <th>Usage</th> <th>Storage location</th> <th>No longer needed</th> <th>When destroyed</th> <th>Destruction algorithm</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>IPsec Diffie-Hellman (DH) private exponent</td> <td>The private exponent used in DH exchange (generated by the TOE)</td> <td>RAM</td> <td>After DH shared secret generation</td> <td>Power off</td> <td>Power loss</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPsec DH shared secret</td> <td>Shared secret generated by the DH key exchange (generated by the TOE)</td> <td>RAM</td> <td>Session termination</td> <td>Power off</td> <td>Power loss</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPsec SKEYID</td> <td>Value derived from the shared secret within IKE exchange (generated by the TOE)</td> <td>RAM</td> <td>Session termination</td> <td>Power off</td> <td>Power loss</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPsec IKE session encrypt key</td> <td>The IKE session encrypt key (generated by the TOE)</td> <td>RAM</td> <td>Session termination</td> <td>Power off</td> <td>Power loss</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Secret type	Usage	Storage location	No longer needed	When destroyed	Destruction algorithm	IPsec Diffie-Hellman (DH) private exponent	The private exponent used in DH exchange (generated by the TOE)	RAM	After DH shared secret generation	Power off	Power loss	IPsec DH shared secret	Shared secret generated by the DH key exchange (generated by the TOE)	RAM	Session termination	Power off	Power loss	IPsec SKEYID	Value derived from the shared secret within IKE exchange (generated by the TOE)	RAM	Session termination	Power off	Power loss	IPsec IKE session encrypt key	The IKE session encrypt key (generated by the TOE)	RAM	Session termination	Power off	Power loss
Secret type	Usage	Storage location	No longer needed	When destroyed	Destruction algorithm																										
IPsec Diffie-Hellman (DH) private exponent	The private exponent used in DH exchange (generated by the TOE)	RAM	After DH shared secret generation	Power off	Power loss																										
IPsec DH shared secret	Shared secret generated by the DH key exchange (generated by the TOE)	RAM	Session termination	Power off	Power loss																										
IPsec SKEYID	Value derived from the shared secret within IKE exchange (generated by the TOE)	RAM	Session termination	Power off	Power loss																										
IPsec IKE session encrypt key	The IKE session encrypt key (generated by the TOE)	RAM	Session termination	Power off	Power loss																										

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale					
	IPsec IKE session authentication key	The IKE session authentication key (generated by the TOE)	RAM	Session termination	Power off	Power loss
	IPsec pre-shared key	The key used to generate the IKE SKEYID during pre-shared key authentication (entered by the administrator)	RAM	After SKEYID generation	Power off	Power loss
	IPsec IKE RSA private key	RSA private key for IKE authentication	RAM	After session establishment	Power off	Power loss
	IPsec encryption key	The IPsec encryption key (generated by the TOE)	RAM	Session termination	Power off	Power loss
	IPsec authentication key	The IPsec authentication key	RAM	Session termination	Power off	Power loss
	Drive-lock password (BEV)	The SED password. Generated by the TOE.	RAM	After boot	Power off	Power loss
AA	<i>The evaluator shall verify the TSS provides a high level description of how keys and key material are destroyed.</i>					
Resp	The Summary section above contains the requested information on a per key basis.					
Objective(s): O.COMMS_PROTECTION						

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale																												
<p>FCS_COP.1(a) (AES)</p>	<p>Summary: IKE and IPsec support both AES CBC 128-bit and AES CBC 256-bit for symmetric data encryption and decryption.</p> <p>IKE supports AES ECB 256-bit for the symmetric encryption in CTR_DRBG(AES) using the HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module meeting both [FIPS197] and [SP800-38A] standards.</p> <p>The drive-lock password generation supports AES CTR 256-bit (which, for CAVP testing, has a dependency on AES ECB 256-bit) for symmetric encryption in CTR_DRBG(AES) using the HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1 meeting both [FIPS197] and [SP800-38A] standards.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Table 45: AES algorithms</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Usage</th> <th>Implementation</th> <th>Op env</th> <th>Algorithm</th> <th>Modes and key sizes</th> <th>CAVP cert #</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">IKE</td> <td rowspan="2">HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module</td> <td rowspan="2">ARM Cortex-A72</td> <td>AES encryption and decryption</td> <td>AES-CBC-128, AES-CBC-256</td> <td rowspan="2">#A2049</td> </tr> <tr> <td>AES encryption</td> <td>AES-ECB-256</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPsec</td> <td>HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API</td> <td>ARM Cortex-A72</td> <td>AES encryption and decryption</td> <td>AES-CBC-128, AES-CBC-256</td> <td>#A2050</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">Drive-lock password (BEV)</td> <td rowspan="2">HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1</td> <td rowspan="2">ARM Cortex-A72</td> <td>AES encryption</td> <td>AES-CTR-256</td> <td rowspan="2">#A2051</td> </tr> <tr> <td>AES encryption</td> <td>AES-ECB-256</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>AA None</p> <p>Resp n/a</p>	Usage	Implementation	Op env	Algorithm	Modes and key sizes	CAVP cert #	IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	ARM Cortex-A72	AES encryption and decryption	AES-CBC-128, AES-CBC-256	#A2049	AES encryption	AES-ECB-256	IPsec	HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API	ARM Cortex-A72	AES encryption and decryption	AES-CBC-128, AES-CBC-256	#A2050	Drive-lock password (BEV)	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	ARM Cortex-A72	AES encryption	AES-CTR-256	#A2051	AES encryption	AES-ECB-256
Usage	Implementation	Op env	Algorithm	Modes and key sizes	CAVP cert #																								
IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	ARM Cortex-A72	AES encryption and decryption	AES-CBC-128, AES-CBC-256	#A2049																								
			AES encryption	AES-ECB-256																									
IPsec	HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API	ARM Cortex-A72	AES encryption and decryption	AES-CBC-128, AES-CBC-256	#A2050																								
Drive-lock password (BEV)	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	ARM Cortex-A72	AES encryption	AES-CTR-256	#A2051																								
			AES encryption	AES-ECB-256																									
<p>FCS_COP.1(b) (RSA)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.COMMS_PROTECTION, O.UPDATE_VERIFICATION</p> <p>Summary: The TOE's IKE uses RSA certificates for digital signature-based authentication. IKE uses the RSA 2048-bit and 3072-bit algorithms for digital signature authentication (i.e., signature generation and verification) using the HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module. The RSA signature generation is based on PKCS#1 v1.5 and uses SHA2-256, SHA2-384, and SHA2-512. The RSA signature verification is based on PKCS#1 v1.5 and uses SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, and SHA2-512. For more details on IKE, see the TSS for FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.</p>																												

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale																									
	<p>The TOE's trusted update function uses the RSA 2048-bit algorithm, SHA2-256 algorithm, and PKCS#1 v1.5 for digital signature verification. This function uses the HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1 implementation of the RSA 2048-bit algorithm. For more details on trusted update, see the TSS for FPT_TUD_EXT.1.</p> <p>The TOE's TSF testing (Whitelisting) function uses the RSA 2048-bit algorithm, SHA2-256 algorithm, and PKCS#1 v1.5 for digital signature verification. This function uses the HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1 implementation of the RSA 2048-bit algorithm. For more details on TSF testing, see the TSS for FPT_TST_EXT.1.</p> <p>All implementations meet the [FIPS186-4] standard.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Table 46: Asymmetric algorithms for signature generation/verification</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Usage</th> <th>Implementation</th> <th>Op env</th> <th>Algorithm</th> <th>Key sizes</th> <th>CAVP cert #</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">IKE</td> <td rowspan="2">HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module</td> <td rowspan="2">ARM Cortex-A72</td> <td>RSA signature generation based on PKCS#1 v1.5 using SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512</td> <td>2048-bits, 3072-bits</td> <td>#A2049</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RSA signature verification based on PKCS#1 v1.5 using SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512</td> <td>2048-bits, 3072-bits</td> <td>#A2049</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Trusted update</td> <td>HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1</td> <td>ARM Cortex-A72</td> <td>RSA signature verification based on PKCS#1 v1.5 using SHA2-256</td> <td>2048-bits</td> <td>#A2051</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>					Usage	Implementation	Op env	Algorithm	Key sizes	CAVP cert #	IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	ARM Cortex-A72	RSA signature generation based on PKCS#1 v1.5 using SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512	2048-bits, 3072-bits	#A2049	RSA signature verification based on PKCS#1 v1.5 using SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512	2048-bits, 3072-bits	#A2049	Trusted update	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	ARM Cortex-A72	RSA signature verification based on PKCS#1 v1.5 using SHA2-256	2048-bits	#A2051
Usage	Implementation	Op env	Algorithm	Key sizes	CAVP cert #																					
IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	ARM Cortex-A72	RSA signature generation based on PKCS#1 v1.5 using SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512	2048-bits, 3072-bits	#A2049																					
			RSA signature verification based on PKCS#1 v1.5 using SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512	2048-bits, 3072-bits	#A2049																					
Trusted update	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	ARM Cortex-A72	RSA signature verification based on PKCS#1 v1.5 using SHA2-256	2048-bits	#A2051																					

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale					
	TSF testing	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	ARM Cortex-A72	RSA signature verification based on PKCS#1 v1.5 using SHA2-256	2048-bits	#A2051
	AA	None				
	Resp	n/a				
FCS_COP.1(c) (SHS)	<p>Objective(s):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • O.COMMS_PROTECTION • O.UPDATE_VERIFICATION • O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION - The TOE uses an SED as the field-replaceable nonvolatile storage device to fulfill this requirement; therefore, the TOE does not implement FCS_COP.1(c) for this objective. For more information on the SED, see FDP_DSK_EXT.1 and the TSS for FDP_DSK_EXT.1.) <p>Summary:</p> <p><u>IKE</u></p> <p>IKE supports the conditioning of text-based pre-shared keys using SHA-1, SHA2-256, and SHA2-512 hash algorithms as specified in FIA_PSK_EXT.1.</p> <p>IKE supports SHA2-256 for KAS FFC and SHA2-256, SHA2-384, and SHA2-512 for KAS ECC as specified in FCS_CKM.1(a).</p> <p>IKE supports SHA2-256, SHA2-384, and SHA2-512 for RSA signature generation and SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, and SHA2-512 for RSA signature verification as specified in FCS_COP.1(b).</p> <p>Also, IKE supports HMAC-SHA2-256, HMAC-SHA2-384, and HMAC-SHA2-512 which use SHA2-256, SHA2-384, and SHA2-512, respectively.</p> <p>IKE uses the HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module for these algorithms. For more details on pre-shared keys, see the TSS for FIA_PSK_EXT.1. For more details on signature generation and verification, see the TSS for FCS_COP.1(b). For more details on the HMAC algorithms, see the TSS for FCS_COP.1(g).</p> <p><u>IPsec</u></p> <p>IPsec supports HMAC-SHA-1, HMAC-SHA2-256, HMAC-SHA2-384, and HMAC-SHA2-512 which use SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, and SHA2-512, respectively.</p>					

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale																						
	<p>IPsec supports HMAC_DRBG with HMAC-SHA2-256 which uses SHA2-256. IPsec uses the HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API for these algorithms. For more details on the HMAC algorithms, see the TSS for FCS_COP.1(g).</p> <p><u>Trusted update</u></p> <p>The TOE's trusted update function uses the SHA2-256 algorithm for RSA digital signature verification. This function uses the HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1 implementation of the SHA2-256 algorithm. For more details on trusted update, see the TSS for FPT_TUD_EXT.1.</p> <p><u>TSF testing</u></p> <p>The TOE's TSF testing (Whitelisting) function uses the SHA2-256 algorithm for RSA digital signature verification. This function uses the HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1 implementation of the SHA2-256 algorithm. For more details on TSF testing, see the TSS for FPT_TST_EXT.1.</p> <p>All implementations meet the [ISO-10118-3] standard.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Table 47: SHS algorithms</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Usage</th> <th>Implementation</th> <th>Op env</th> <th>Purpose</th> <th>Algorithm</th> <th>CAVP cert #</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="6">IKE</td> <td rowspan="6">HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module</td> <td rowspan="6">ARM Cortex-A72</td> <td>Pre-shared keys</td> <td>SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-512</td> <td rowspan="6">#A2049</td> </tr> <tr> <td>KAS FFC</td> <td>SHA2-256</td> </tr> <tr> <td>KAS ECC</td> <td>SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RSA digital signature generation</td> <td>SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RSA digital signature verification</td> <td>SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HMAC</td> <td>SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Usage	Implementation	Op env	Purpose	Algorithm	CAVP cert #	IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	ARM Cortex-A72	Pre-shared keys	SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-512	#A2049	KAS FFC	SHA2-256	KAS ECC	SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512	RSA digital signature generation	SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512	RSA digital signature verification	SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512	HMAC	SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512
Usage	Implementation	Op env	Purpose	Algorithm	CAVP cert #																		
IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	ARM Cortex-A72	Pre-shared keys	SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-512	#A2049																		
			KAS FFC	SHA2-256																			
			KAS ECC	SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512																			
			RSA digital signature generation	SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512																			
			RSA digital signature verification	SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512																			
			HMAC	SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512																			

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale					
	IPsec	HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API	ARM Cortex-A72	HMAC	SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512	#A2050
	Trusted update	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	ARM Cortex-A72	HMAC (HMAC_DRBG)	SHA2-256	#A2051
	TSF testing	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	ARM Cortex-A72	RSA digital signature verification	SHA2-256	#A2051
AA	<i>The evaluator shall check that the association of the hash function with other TSF cryptographic functions (for example, the digital signature verification function) is documented in the TSS.</i>					
Resp	<p>IKE supports the conditioning of text-based pre-shared keys using SHA-1, SHA2-256, and SHA2-512 hash algorithms as specified in FIA_PSK_EXT.1. For more details on the pre-shared keys, see the TSS for FIA_PSK_EXT.1.</p> <p>IKE supports SHA2-256 for KAS FFC and SHA2-256, SHA2-384, and SHA2-512 for KAS ECC as specified in TSS for FCS_CKM.1(a). For more details on KAS FFC and KAS ECC, see the TSS for FCS_CKM.1(a).</p> <p>IKE supports SHA2-256, SHA2-384, and SHA2-512 for RSA signature generation and SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, and SHA2-512 for RSA signature verification. For more details on the signature generation and verification algorithms, see the TSS for FCS_COP.1(b).</p> <p>IKE also supports HMAC algorithms using SHA2-256, SHA2-384, and SHA2-512. For more details on the HMAC algorithms, see the TSS for FCS_COP.1(g).</p> <p>IPsec supports HMAC-SHA-1, HMAC-SHA2-256, HMAC-SHA2-384, and HMAC-SHA2-512 which use SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, and SHA2-512, respectively. For more details on the HMAC algorithms, see the TSS for FCS_COP.1(g).</p>					

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale																									
	<p>IPsec supports HMAC_DRBG with HMAC-SHA2-256 which uses SHA2-256. For more details on the HMAC algorithms, see the TSS for FCS_COP.1(g).</p> <p>For trusted update, the RSA digital signature verification uses the SHA2-256 hash algorithm. For more details on digital signatures in trusted update, see the TSS for FPT_TUD_EXT.1.</p> <p>For TSF testing (Whitelisting), the RSA digital signature verification uses the SHA2-256 hash algorithm. For more details on digital signatures in TSF testing, see the TSS for FPT_TST_EXT.1.</p>																									
<p>FCS_COP.1(g) (HMAC)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.COMMS_PROTECTION</p> <p>Summary:</p> <p><u>IKE</u></p> <p>IKE supports the keyed-hash message authentication algorithms and key sizes specified in Table 48 using the HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module meeting [FIPS180-4] (which supersedes FIPS 180-3 specified in the SFR) and [FIPS198-1].</p> <p>IKE uses truncated HMACs. Table 48 also shows the actual digest sizes and the truncated digest sizes. For more details on the required HMAC algorithms, see the TSS for FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.</p> <p><u>IPsec</u></p> <p>IPsec support the keyed-hash message authentication algorithms and key sizes specified in Table 48 using the HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API meeting [FIPS180-4] (which supersedes FIPS 180-3 specified in the SFR) and [FIPS198-1].</p> <p>IPsec use truncated HMACs. Table 48 also shows the actual digest sizes and the truncated digest sizes. For more details on the required HMAC algorithms, see the TSS for FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.</p> <p>IPsec supports HMAC_DRBG with HMAC-SHA2-256 which uses SHA2-256. Table 48: HMAC algorithms</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Usage</th> <th>Implementation</th> <th>Op env</th> <th>Algorithm</th> <th>Key size</th> <th>Actual/Trunc. Digest size</th> <th>CAVP cert #</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="3">IKE</td> <td rowspan="3">HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module</td> <td rowspan="3">ARM Cortex-A72</td> <td>HMAC-SHA1-96</td> <td>160 bits</td> <td>160/96 bits</td> <td rowspan="3">#A2049</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HMAC-SHA2-256-128</td> <td>256 bits</td> <td>256/128 bits</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HMAC-SHA2-384-192</td> <td>384 bits</td> <td>384/192 bits</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>						Usage	Implementation	Op env	Algorithm	Key size	Actual/Trunc. Digest size	CAVP cert #	IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	ARM Cortex-A72	HMAC-SHA1-96	160 bits	160/96 bits	#A2049	HMAC-SHA2-256-128	256 bits	256/128 bits	HMAC-SHA2-384-192	384 bits	384/192 bits
Usage	Implementation	Op env	Algorithm	Key size	Actual/Trunc. Digest size	CAVP cert #																				
IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	ARM Cortex-A72	HMAC-SHA1-96	160 bits	160/96 bits	#A2049																				
			HMAC-SHA2-256-128	256 bits	256/128 bits																					
			HMAC-SHA2-384-192	384 bits	384/192 bits																					

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale						
				HMAC-SHA2-512-256	512 bits	512/256 bits	
	IPsec	HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API	ARM Cortex-A72	HMAC-SHA1-96	160 bits	160/96 bits	#A2050
				HMAC-SHA2-256-128	256 bits	256/128 bits	
				HMAC-SHA2-384-192	384 bits	384/192 bits	
				HMAC-SHA2-512-256	512 bits	512/256 bits	
AA	None						
Resp	n/a						
FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1 (IPsec)	<p>Objective(s): O.COMMS_PROTECTION</p> <p>Summary: The TOE uses IPsec to protect all communication channels required to satisfy O.COMMS_PROTECTION. IPsec must be enabled in the evaluated configuration. The management function for enabling IPsec is specified in the TSS for FMT_MOF.1.</p> <p>IPsec supports both PSKs and X.509v3 certificates for authentication, the Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP), Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP), and Internet Key Exchange version 1 (IKEv1) protocol.</p> <p>IKEv1 supports following cryptographic algorithms.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DH (dhEphem) P=2048, SHA2-256 (FCS_CKM.1(a)) • DSA (FCS_CKM.1(a)) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ L=2048, N=224 ◦ L=2048, N=256 ◦ L=3072, N=256 • ECDH (ephemeral unified) (FCS_CKM.1(a)) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ P-256, SHA2-256 ◦ P-384, SHA2-384 ◦ P-521, SHA2-512 • ECDSA P-256, P-384, and P-521 (FCS_CKM.1(a)) • RSA 2048-bit and 3072-bit signature generation/verification (FCS_COP.1(b)) 						

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AES-CBC-128, AES-CBC-256, and AES-ECB-256 (FCS_COP.1(a)) • HMAC-SHA-1, HMAC-SHA2-256, HMAC-SHA2-384, and HMAC-SHA2-512 (FCS_COP.1(g)) • CTR_DRBG(AES) (FCS_RBG_EXT.1) <p>IPsec ESP supports the following cryptographic algorithms.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AES-CBC-128 and AES-CBC-256 (FCS_COP.1(a)) • HMAC-SHA-1, HMAC-SHA2-256, HMAC-SHA2-384, and HMAC-SHA2-512 (FCS_COP.1(g)) • HMAC_DRBG (FCS_RBG_EXT.1) <p>The TOE imports the RSA keys—in the form of X.509v3 certificates—used by IKEv1 in the evaluated configuration. It does not generate RSA keys. During the TOE's initial configuration, the administrator imports the TOE's RSA-based identity certificate and the matching RSA-based Certificate Authority (CA) root certificate from the Operational Environment as described in the [CCECG] section <i>Certificates</i>. The administrator also imports any other RSA-based CA certificates necessary for peer authentication. For more information on the TOE's certificate management capabilities, see the TSS for FMT_MTD.1 for certificate importing.</p> <p>IKEv1 supports and allows either DH/DSA or ECDH/ECDSA in phase 1 to establish a protected connection using KAS FFC and KAS ECC, respectively. Random values generated for the KAS FFC or KAS ECC are generated by the TOE using the CTR_DRBG(AES) DRBG specified in FCS_RBG_EXT.1 and described in the TSS for FCS_RBG_EXT.1. The CTR_DRBG(AES) DRBG uses the AES-ECB-256 algorithm.</p> <p>For IKEv1, the TOE supports peer authentication using either RSA-based digital signatures (RSA 2048-bit and 3072-bit) or pre-shared keys. IKEv1 uses only Main Mode for Phase 1 exchanges to provide identity protection. (Aggressive Mode is not supported and is not a configurable option.)</p> <p>The encrypted IKEv1 payloads are required to use either AES-CBC-128 or AES-CBC-256. No other payload algorithms are allowed in the evaluated configuration.</p> <p>The TOE's IKEv1 supports the following DH Groups. The DH groups are specified using a defined group description as specified in [RFC3526].</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DH Group 14 (2048-bit MODP) • DH Group 15 (3072-bit MODP) • DH Group 16 (4096-bit MODP) • DH Group 17 (6144-bit MODP) • DH Group 18 (8192-bit MODP) <p>All TOE cryptographic functions used by IKE are implemented in the HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module.</p> <p>The TOE's Security Association (SA) lifetimes can be established based on the length of time, where the time values can be limited to 24 hours for Phase 1 SAs and 8 hours for Phase 2 SAs.</p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale
	<p>The TOE's IPsec processes packets following the policy order defined in the Security Policy Database (SPD). The first matching policy is used to process the packet. The final policy in the SPD matches all unmatched packets and causes the TOE to discard the packet.</p> <p>The TOE's IPsec is conformant to the MUST/MUST NOT requirements of the following Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Request for Comments (RFCs).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • [RFC3602] for use of AES-CBC-128 and AES-CBC-256 in IPsec • [RFC4301] for IPsec • [RFC4303] for ESP • [RFC4304] for extended sequence numbers • [RFC2407] and [RFC2408] for ISAKMP • [RFC2409] and [RFC4109] for IKEv1 • [RFC4868] for SHA-2 HMAC in IPsec <p><u>Incoming packet processing</u></p> <p>In a network context, the TOE is an endpoint versus being an intermediary such as a network switch. Thus, packets originate from and terminate at the TOE.</p> <p>When the TOE receives an incoming packet, it determines whether or not the packet is destined for the TOE. If not destined for the TOE, the packet is discarded. If destined for the TOE, the IPsec rules are applied. The rules map address templates to service templates. In essence, the rules map IP addresses to ports. The default rule is to discard (i.e., drop) all packets that do not match a rule. This default rule can be modified by an administrator. Also, if the packet is not an IPsec protected packet, the packet is discarded except for the DHCPv4/BOOTP, DHCPv6, ICMPv4, and ICMPv6 service packets which are bypassed. The TOE's simplicity of the rule configuration helps to avoid overlapping rules, but if one or more overlapping rules exist, the first matching rule is the rule that is enforced. Administrators can add, delete, enable, and disable rules as well as modify the processing order of existing rules.</p> <p>If the packet is a request for a new connection, then the IKE negotiation is performed to establish SAs based on the connection rules in the SPD. This negotiation supports both pre-shared keys and certificates. Next, the packet is compared against the set of known SAs. If the packet fails to match an SA, the packet is discarded. The SA is checked to ensure that the SA's lifetime has not expired and that the amount of data allowed by the SA has not been exceeded. If any of these checks fail, the packet is discarded. If all the checks succeed, the IPsec portion of the packet processing is considered complete, and the packet is processed as part of the connection's flow.</p> <p><u>Outgoing packet processing</u></p> <p>The TOE originates packets over established IPsec connections. Because of this, only protected (encrypted) packets are sent from the TOE to connected IT entities. The exceptions being for the DHCPv4/BOOTP, DHCPv6, ICMPv4, and ICMPv6 service packets which are bypassed. The TOE does not forward packets received from other devices.</p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale
	<p>Protected packets being transmitted are compared to the SPD rules for that interface. Again, the first matching rule applies. Packets matching an SPD rule are encrypted and sent to the IT entity. All other packets are discarded. If this is the first transmission, an SA is created based on the SPD connection rules.</p>
AA	<p><i>As per NIAP Technical Decision [CCEVS-TD0157] FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.1: The evaluator shall examine the TSS and determine that it describes what takes place when a packet is processed by the TOE, e.g., the algorithm used to process the packet. The TSS describes how the SPD is implemented and the rules for processing both inbound and outbound packets in terms of the IPsec policy. The TSS describes the rules that are available and the resulting actions available after matching a rule. The TSS describes how those rules and actions form the SPD in terms of the BYPASS (e.g., no encryption), DISCARD (e.g., drop the packet) and PROTECT (e.g., encrypt the packet) actions defined in RFC 4301.</i></p> <p><i>As noted in section 4.4.1 of [RFC4301], the processing of entries in the SPD is non-trivial and the evaluator shall determine that the description in the TSS is sufficient to determine which rules will be applied given the rule structure implemented by the TOE. For example, if the TOE allows specification of ranges, conditional rules, etc., the evaluator shall determine that the description of rule processing (for both inbound and outbound packets) is sufficient to determine the action that will be applied, especially in the case where two different rules may apply. This description shall cover both the initial packets (that is, no SA is established on the interface or for that particular packet) as well as packets that are part of an established SA.</i></p>
Resp	<p>The Summary section above provides a description of the packet processing.</p>
AA	<p><i>FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.2: The evaluator checks the TSS to ensure it states that the VPN can be established to operate in tunnel mode and/or transport mode (as selected).</i></p>
Resp	<p>The VPN operates in transport mode only in the evaluated configuration.</p>
AA	<p><i>FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.3: The evaluator shall examine the TSS to verify that the TSS provides a description of how a packet is processed against the SPD and that if no “rules” are found to match, that a final rule exists, either implicitly or explicitly, that causes the network packet to be discarded.</i></p>
Resp	<p>Packets are processed following the order defined in the Security Policy Database (SPD). The first matching policy is used to process the packet. The final policy in the SPD matches all unmatched packets and causes the TOE to discard the packet.</p>
AA	<p><i>FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.4: The evaluator shall examine the TSS to verify that the symmetric encryption algorithms selected (along with the SHA-based HMAC algorithm, if AES-CBC is selected) are described. If selected, the evaluator ensures that the SHA-based HMAC algorithm conforms to the algorithms specified in FCS_COP.1(g) Cryptographic Operations (for keyed-hash message authentication).</i></p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale	
	Resp	Algorithms: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AES-CBC-128 and AES-CBC-256 (FCS_COP.1(a)) • HMAC-SHA-1, HMAC-SHA2-256, HMAC-SHA2-384, and HMAC-SHA2-512 (FCS_COP.1(g))
	AA	<i>FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.5: The evaluator shall examine the TSS to verify that IKEv1 and/or IKEv2 are implemented.</i>
	Resp	Only IKEv1 is supported in the evaluated configuration.
	AA	<i>FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.6: The evaluator shall ensure the TSS identifies the algorithms used for encrypting the IKEv1 and/or IKEv2 payload, and that the algorithms AES-CBC-128, AES-CBC-256 are specified, and if others are chosen in the selection of the requirement, those are included in the TSS discussion.</i>
	Resp	Only AES-CBC-128 and AES-CBC-256 are used for encrypting the payload.
	AA	<i>FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.7: The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure that, in the description of the IPsec protocol supported by the TOE, it states that aggressive mode is not used for IKEv1 Phase 1 exchanges, and that only main mode is used. It may be that this is a configurable option.</i>
	Resp	Only Main Mode is used for Phase 1 exchanges. Aggressive Mode is not supported and is not a configurable option.
	AA	<i>FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.9: The evaluator shall check to ensure that the DH groups specified in the requirement are listed as being supported in the TSS. If there is more than one DH group supported, the evaluator checks to ensure the TSS describes how a particular DH group is specified/negotiated with a peer.</i>
	Resp	The DH groups are specified using a defined group description as specified in [RFC3526].
	AA	<i>FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.10: The evaluator shall check that the TSS contains a description of the IKE peer authentication process used by the TOE, and that this description covers the use of the signature algorithm or algorithms specified in the requirement.</i>
	Resp	RSA-based digital signatures (RSA 2048-bit and 3072-bit) or pre-shared keys.
FCS_KYC_EX T.1 (Key chaining)	<p>Objective(s): O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION</p> <p>Summary: The TOE uses a 256-bit drive-lock password (a.k.a. BEV) to unlock the TOE's field-replaceable SED. This BEV is stored as a key chain of one in a non-field replaceable nonvolatile storage (SPI flash and EEPROM) located inside the TOE. The TOE generates this BEV by making a single invocation request for 256-bits of data from the HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1 DRBG specified in FCS_RBG_EXT.1.</p> <p>The BEV is automatically generated by the TOE when the TOE is first initialized and stored in non-field replaceable, nonvolatile memory. Afterwards, the BEV is never changed in the</p>	

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale																							
	<p>evaluated configuration; therefore, there are no claimed security management functions for the BEV in this ST. It is also never destroyed. No interfaces are provided to view the BEV or to retrieve the BEV; therefore, the BEV is never seen by a human (i.e., it is only known by the TOE).</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td> <p>The evaluator shall verify the TSS contains a high-level description of the BEV sizes – that it supports BEV outputs of no fewer [than] 128 bits for products that support only AES-128, and no fewer than 256 bits for products that support AES-256.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td> <p>The drive-lock password (a.k.a. BEV) is a 256-bit binary value and generated using FCS_RBG_EXT.1.</p> </td> </tr> </table>		AA	<p>The evaluator shall verify the TSS contains a high-level description of the BEV sizes – that it supports BEV outputs of no fewer [than] 128 bits for products that support only AES-128, and no fewer than 256 bits for products that support AES-256.</p>	Resp	<p>The drive-lock password (a.k.a. BEV) is a 256-bit binary value and generated using FCS_RBG_EXT.1.</p>																		
AA	<p>The evaluator shall verify the TSS contains a high-level description of the BEV sizes – that it supports BEV outputs of no fewer [than] 128 bits for products that support only AES-128, and no fewer than 256 bits for products that support AES-256.</p>																							
Resp	<p>The drive-lock password (a.k.a. BEV) is a 256-bit binary value and generated using FCS_RBG_EXT.1.</p>																							
<p>FCS_RBG_EX T.1 (DRBG)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.COMMS_PROTECTION, O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION</p> <p>Summary: IKE uses the CTR_DRBG(AES) DRBG algorithm from the HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module to generate key and key material. This DRBG supports the AES 256-bit algorithm. The AES-ECB-256 algorithm claimed in FCS_COP.1(a) is used by this DRBG.</p> <p>IPsec uses the HMAC_DRBG algorithm with HMAC-SHA2-256 from the HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API. The HMAC-SHA2-256 algorithm claimed in FCS_COP.1(g) is used by this DRBG.</p> <p>The SED drive-lock password generation mechanism uses the CTR_DRBG(AES) algorithm from the HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1 to generate the password (BEV). This DRBG supports the AES 256-bit algorithm. The AES-CTR-256 algorithm claimed in FCS_COP.1(a) is used by this DRBG.</p> <p>The three DRBGs are seeded by a hardware-based entropy noise source. This entropy source provides at least 256 bits of minimum entropy.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Table 49: DRBG algorithms</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Usage</th> <th>Implementation</th> <th>Op env</th> <th>Modes and key sizes</th> <th>CAVP cert #</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>IKE</td> <td>HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module</td> <td>ARM Cortex-A72</td> <td>CTR_DRBG(AES)</td> <td>#A2049</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPsec</td> <td>HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API</td> <td>ARM Cortex-A72</td> <td>HMAC_DRBG(HMAC-SHA2-256)</td> <td>#A2050</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Drive-lock password (BEV)</td> <td>HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1</td> <td>ARM Cortex-A72</td> <td>CTR_DRBG(AES)</td> <td>#A2051</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td> <p>For any RBG services provided by a third party, the evaluator shall ensure the TSS includes a statement about the expected amount of entropy received from such a source,</p> </td> </tr> </table>		Usage	Implementation	Op env	Modes and key sizes	CAVP cert #	IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	ARM Cortex-A72	CTR_DRBG(AES)	#A2049	IPsec	HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API	ARM Cortex-A72	HMAC_DRBG(HMAC-SHA2-256)	#A2050	Drive-lock password (BEV)	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	ARM Cortex-A72	CTR_DRBG(AES)	#A2051	AA	<p>For any RBG services provided by a third party, the evaluator shall ensure the TSS includes a statement about the expected amount of entropy received from such a source,</p>
Usage	Implementation	Op env	Modes and key sizes	CAVP cert #																				
IKE	HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	ARM Cortex-A72	CTR_DRBG(AES)	#A2049																				
IPsec	HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API	ARM Cortex-A72	HMAC_DRBG(HMAC-SHA2-256)	#A2050																				
Drive-lock password (BEV)	HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	ARM Cortex-A72	CTR_DRBG(AES)	#A2051																				
AA	<p>For any RBG services provided by a third party, the evaluator shall ensure the TSS includes a statement about the expected amount of entropy received from such a source,</p>																							

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale	
		<p>and a full description of the processing of the output of the third-party source. The evaluator shall verify that this statement is consistent with the selection made in FCS_RBG_EXT.1.2 for the seeding of the DRBG. If the ST specifies more than one DRBG, the evaluator shall examine the TSS to verify that it identifies the usage of each DRBG mechanism.</p>
	Resp	<p>The TOE implements three DRBGs. One is used by IKE, another is used by IPsec and another is used for the SED drive-lock password (BEV) generation.</p>
<p>FDP_ACC.1 (Subset access control)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.ACCESS_CONTROL, O.USER_AUTHORIZATION</p> <p>Summary: [HCDPP] predefines the subjects, objects, and operations. Table 28 and Table 29 of this ST list these values and enumerates the operations between the subjects and objects.</p>	
	AA	<p>It is covered by assurance activities for FDP_ACF.1.</p>
	Resp	<p>n/a</p>
<p>FDP_ACF.1 (Security attribute based access control)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.ACCESS_CONTROL, O.USER_AUTHORIZATION</p> <p>Summary: In this section, Table 28 is explained first followed by Table 29.</p> <p><u>Print Create D.USER.DOC in Table 28</u></p> <p>Print jobs are submitted to the TOE over the network using PJI. Any computer that can connect to the TOE using IPsec can submit a print job. The TOE requires a user identity (a.k.a. job owner) to be included with each print job, but this user identity is unauthenticated. For this reason, the job owner, U.ADMIN, and U.NORMAL boxes in Table 28 for "Print Create" are marked as not applicable (n/a) because the job owner is always unauthenticated. If no job owner is provided with the print job, the print job is rejected by the TOE.</p> <p>Required security attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Subject: None (Unauthenticated user) • Object: Job owner <p><u>Print Read/Modify/Delete D.USER.DOC in Table 28</u></p> <p>In order to print, the user must log in via the Control Panel. Each print job, when created, must have a user identity supplied by the client computer. This user identity is used as the job owner. The logged in user's identity must match the user identity of the print job in order for the logged in user to be considered the job owner. Only the job owner can print (read) the job. Only the job owner and U.ADMIN can delete a print job. By design, the D.USER.DOC information of a print job cannot be modified by anyone.</p> <p>Required security attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Subject: Control Panel user identity/role • Object: Job owner <p><u>Scan Create/Read/Modify/Delete D.USER.DOC in Table 28</u></p>	

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale
	<p>In order to scan a document, the user must be logged into the TOE via the Control Panel. When the job is scanned, the job is owned by the logged in user. Neither an administrator (U.ADMIN) nor another user (U.NORMAL) can create a scan job under a different user identity. The job owner can create, read, modify, and delete a scan job. The U.ADMIN can delete a scan job.</p> <p>Required security attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Subject: Control Panel user identity/role • Object: Job owner <p><u>Copy Create/Read/Modify/Delete D.USER.DOC in Table 28</u></p> <p>In order to copy a document, the user must be logged into the TOE via the Control Panel. During the copy process, the job is owned by the user who initiated it. The job owner can create, read, modify, and delete a copy job. The U.ADMIN can delete a copy job.</p> <p>Required security attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Subject: Control Panel user identity/role • Object: Job owner <p><u>Fax send Create/Read/Modify/Delete D.USER.DOC in Table 28</u></p> <p>In order to perform a fax send job, the user must be logged into the TOE via the Control Panel. During the fax sending process, the job is owned by the user who initiated it. The job owner can create, read, modify, and delete a fax send job. The U.ADMIN can delete a fax send job.</p> <p>Required security attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Subject: Control Panel user identity/role • Object: Job owner <p><u>Fax receive Create/Read/Modify/Delete D.USER.DOC in Table 28</u></p> <p>All incoming faxes are owned by the Device Administrator account. In order to access a fax receive job, the fax owner or another U.ADMIN must be logged into the TOE via the Control Panel. The fax owner (i.e., Device Administrator) can create a fax receive job. Both the fax owner and another U.ADMIN can read and delete a fax receive job. By design, the D.USER.DOC information of a fax receive job cannot be modified by anyone.</p> <p>Required security attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Subject: Control Panel user identity/role • Object: Fax owner <p><u>Storage / retrieval Create/Read/Modify/Delete D.USER.DOC in Table 28</u></p> <p>Print jobs and fax received jobs can be stored in Job Storage.</p> <p>For print jobs, client computers connect over IPsec to submit print jobs via PjL. The users of these client computers can submit print jobs which are then stored in Job Storage by the TOE. The TOE requires each print job to contain a user identity that is then used as the job owner of the print job. This user identity is unauthenticated and can be any identity the submitter on the client computer chooses. Thus, for print jobs, only unauthenticated users can store a print job in</p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale
	<p>Job Storage. This is why "allowed" is shown for "create" in Table 28 for unauthenticated users. Only the job owner can "read" a print job from Job Storage. Both the job owner and any administrator can delete a print job from Job Storage. By design, the D.USER.DOC information of a print job in Job Storage cannot be modified by anyone.</p> <p>Fax receive jobs are stored in Job Storage. All incoming faxes are owned by the Device Administrator account. In order to access a fax receive job in Job Storage, the job owner or another U.ADMIN must be logged into the TOE via the Control Panel. Only the job owner (i.e., Device Administrator) can create a fax receive job. Both the job owner and another U.ADMIN can read and delete a fax receive job. By design, the D.USER.DOC information of a fax receive job in Job Storage cannot be modified by anyone.</p> <p>Required security attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Subject: Unauthenticated users (create print job only) or Control Panel user identity/role • Object: Job owner <p><u><i>Print Create/Read/Modify/Delete D.USER.JOB in Table 29</i></u></p> <p>For the same reasons described in "Print Create D.USER.DOC" above, the job owner, U.ADMIN, and U.NORMAL, are marked as not applicable (n/a) because the job owner is always unauthenticated.</p> <p>Job owner, U.ADMIN, and U.NORMAL can view the print queue, thus, they can see all print jobs, but only the job owner and U.ADMIN can view the print log. Unauthenticated users cannot view the print queue or print log.</p> <p>Only the job owner and U.ADMIN can delete the print job of a job owned by the job owner.</p> <p>By design, the D.USER.JOB information of a print job cannot be modified by anyone.</p> <p>Required security attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Subject: Unauthenticated user (create print job and view print queue only) or Control Panel user identity/role • Object: Job owner <p><u><i>Scan Create/Read/Modify/Delete(Cancel) D.USER.JOB in Table 29</i></u></p> <p>In order to scan a document, the user must be logged into the TOE via the Control Panel. When the job is scanned (i.e., created), the job is owned by the logged in user. Neither U.ADMIN nor another user can create a scan job under a different user identity. The job owner can create, view scan status/log, and cancel a scan job owned by the job owner. An administrator (U.ADMIN) can view the scan status/log, and cancel a scan job. Other U.NORMAL users can view the scan status, but not the scan log. By design, the D.USER.JOB information of a scan job cannot be modified by anyone.</p> <p>Required security attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Subject: Control Panel user identity/role • Object: Job owner

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale
	<p><u>Copy Create/Read/Modify/Delete D.USER.JOB in Table 29</u></p> <p>In order to copy a document, the user must be logged into the TOE via the Control Panel. When the job is copied (i.e., created), the job is owned by the logged in user. Neither an administrator nor another user can create a copy job under a different user identity. The job owner can create, view the copy status/log, and cancel a copy job owned by the job owner. An administrator (U.ADMIN) can view the copy status/log, and cancel a copy job. Other U.NORMAL users can view the copy status, but not the copy log. By design, the D.USER.JOB information of a copy job cannot be modified by anyone.</p> <p>Required security attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Subject: Control Panel user identity/role • Object: Job owner <p><u>Fax send Create/Read/Modify/Delete D.USER.JOB in Table 29</u></p> <p>In order to perform a fax send job, the user must be logged into the TOE via the Control Panel. During the fax sending process, the job is owned by the user who initiated it. The job owner can create, view the fax send queue/log, and cancel a fax send job owned by the job owner. An administrator (U.ADMIN) can view the fax send status/log, and cancel a fax send job. Other U.NORMAL and users can view the fax send status, but not the fax send log. By design, the D.USER.JOB information of a fax send job cannot be modified by anyone.</p> <p>Required security attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Subject: Control Panel user identity/role • Object: Job owner <p><u>Fax receive Create/Read/Modify/Delete D.USER.JOB in Table 29</u></p> <p>All incoming faxes are owned (i.e., created) by the Device Administrator account. In order to access a fax receive job, the fax owner or another U.ADMIN must be logged into the TOE via the Control Panel. Both the fax owner and another U.ADMIN can view the fax receive status/log, and delete a fax receive job owned by the job owner. Other U.NORMAL users can view the fax receive status, but not the fax receive log. By design, the D.USER.JOB information of a fax receive job cannot be modified by anyone.</p> <p>Required security attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Subject: Control Panel user identity/role • Object: Fax owner <p><u>Storage / retrieval Create/Read/Modify/Delete D.USER.JOB in Table 29</u></p> <p>Print jobs and fax received jobs can be stored in Job Storage.</p> <p>For print jobs, client computers connect over IPsec to submit print jobs via PJJL. The users of these client computers can submit print jobs which are stored in Job Storage. The TOE requires each print job to contain a user identity that is then used as the job owner of the print job. This user identity is unauthenticated and can be any identity the submitter on the client computer chooses. Thus, for print jobs, only unauthenticated users can store a print job in Job Storage.</p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale				
	<p>This is why "allowed" is shown for "create" in Table 29 for unauthenticated users. The job owner and U.ADMIN can view the list of jobs in Job Storage owned by the job owner. By design, the U.USER.JOB information of a print job stored in Job Storage cannot be modified.</p> <p>Fax receive jobs are stored in Job Storage. All incoming faxes are owned by the Device Administrator account. In order to access a fax receive job, the job owner or another U.ADMIN must be logged into the TOE via the Control Panel. Only the job owner (i.e., Device Administrator) can create a fax receive job. Both the job owner and another U.ADMIN can read and delete a fax receive job. The fax receive job's D.USER.JOB cannot be modified by anyone.</p> <p>Required security attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Subject: Unauthenticated users (create print job only) or Control Panel user identity/role • Object: Job owner <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes the functions to realize SFP defined in Table 28 and Table 29.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>See the description above.</td> </tr> </table>	AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes the functions to realize SFP defined in Table 28 and Table 29.</i>	Resp	See the description above.
AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes the functions to realize SFP defined in Table 28 and Table 29.</i>				
Resp	See the description above.				
<p>FDP_DSK_EX T.1 (Disk data protection)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION</p> <p>Summary: The TOE contains one field-replaceable, nonvolatile storage device. This storage device is a disk-based self-encrypting drive (SED).</p> <p>[HCDPP] states that SEDs must be CC certified using the Full Disk Encryption (FDE) Encryption Engine (EE) collaborative PP (cPP). The field-replaceable SED model used by TOE models is CC certified using the FDE EE cPP</p> <p>The following is the product name, model, hardware version, and firmware version for the SED:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Name: Seagate Secure® TCG SSC Self-Encrypting Drive • Model: ST500LM033 • Hardware version: 1RD17D • Firmware version: RTE2 <p>The SED is CC certified. The following is information for the CC certification of the SED:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • NIAP: VID11209 • Security Target: Version 1.1, February 4, 2022 <p>The SED performs all of the storage encryption and decryption internally (i.e., the SED corresponds to the FDE EE) without any TOE or user intervention. The encryption and decryption implementation is built into the SED. The data is encrypted and stored by the SED as the SED receives the data. The SED decrypts the data when a read request is made. The standard Serial AT Attachment (SATA) interface is used to interface the TOE to the drive.</p> <p>The TOE provides an SED drive-lock password (a.k.a. BEV) to the SED. The SED uses this password to decrypt the symmetric key it uses to encrypt and decrypt the data on the SED (i.e.,</p>				

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale				
	<p>the TOE corresponds the FDE AA). Only when the TOE provides the correct password to the SED can the SED's symmetric key be decrypted.</p> <p>The TOE generates the initial drive-lock password when the TOE is initialized and stores it in the TOE's internal non-field replaceable nonvolatile storage (SPI flash and EEPROM). This password is never changed and is not accessible by any user.</p> <p>SEDs typically have a small portion of space on the drive that is not encrypted. This unencrypted space is used by the drive to store its own key chains needed to encrypt and decrypt the rest of the storage. The SED uses the drive-lock password (BEV) provided by the TOE to encrypt and decrypt this key chain. The TOE has no control over this unencrypted space.</p> <p>For more information on the SED drive-lock password, see the TSS for FCS_KYC_EXT.1.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td> <p><i>As per NIAP Technical Decision [CCEVS-TD0176]</i></p> <p><i>If the self-encrypting device option is selected, the device must be certified in conformance to the current Full Disk Encryption Protection Profile. The tester shall confirm that the specific SED is listed in the TSS, documented and verified to be CC certified against the FDE EE cPP.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure that the description is comprehensive in how the data is written to the Device and the point at which the encryption function is applied.</i></p> <p><i>For the cryptographic functions that are provided by the Operational Environment, the evaluator shall check the TSS to ensure it describes the interface(s) used by the TOE to invoke this functionality.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall verify that the TSS describes the initialization of the Device at shipment of the TOE, or by the activities the TOE performs to ensure that it encrypts all the storage devices entirely when a user or administrator first provisions the Device.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall verify the TSS describes areas of the Device that it does not encrypt (e.g., portions that do not contain confidential data boot loaders, partition tables, etc.).</i></p> <p><i>If the TOE supports multiple Device encryptions, the evaluator shall examine the administration guidance to ensure the initialization procedure encrypts all Devices.</i></p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>The Summary section above provides the necessary description for this assurance activity.</td> </tr> </table>	AA	<p><i>As per NIAP Technical Decision [CCEVS-TD0176]</i></p> <p><i>If the self-encrypting device option is selected, the device must be certified in conformance to the current Full Disk Encryption Protection Profile. The tester shall confirm that the specific SED is listed in the TSS, documented and verified to be CC certified against the FDE EE cPP.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure that the description is comprehensive in how the data is written to the Device and the point at which the encryption function is applied.</i></p> <p><i>For the cryptographic functions that are provided by the Operational Environment, the evaluator shall check the TSS to ensure it describes the interface(s) used by the TOE to invoke this functionality.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall verify that the TSS describes the initialization of the Device at shipment of the TOE, or by the activities the TOE performs to ensure that it encrypts all the storage devices entirely when a user or administrator first provisions the Device.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall verify the TSS describes areas of the Device that it does not encrypt (e.g., portions that do not contain confidential data boot loaders, partition tables, etc.).</i></p> <p><i>If the TOE supports multiple Device encryptions, the evaluator shall examine the administration guidance to ensure the initialization procedure encrypts all Devices.</i></p>	Resp	The Summary section above provides the necessary description for this assurance activity.
AA	<p><i>As per NIAP Technical Decision [CCEVS-TD0176]</i></p> <p><i>If the self-encrypting device option is selected, the device must be certified in conformance to the current Full Disk Encryption Protection Profile. The tester shall confirm that the specific SED is listed in the TSS, documented and verified to be CC certified against the FDE EE cPP.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure that the description is comprehensive in how the data is written to the Device and the point at which the encryption function is applied.</i></p> <p><i>For the cryptographic functions that are provided by the Operational Environment, the evaluator shall check the TSS to ensure it describes the interface(s) used by the TOE to invoke this functionality.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall verify that the TSS describes the initialization of the Device at shipment of the TOE, or by the activities the TOE performs to ensure that it encrypts all the storage devices entirely when a user or administrator first provisions the Device.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall verify the TSS describes areas of the Device that it does not encrypt (e.g., portions that do not contain confidential data boot loaders, partition tables, etc.).</i></p> <p><i>If the TOE supports multiple Device encryptions, the evaluator shall examine the administration guidance to ensure the initialization procedure encrypts all Devices.</i></p>				
Resp	The Summary section above provides the necessary description for this assurance activity.				
<p>FDP_FXS_EX T.1 (Fax separation)</p>	<p><u>Objective(s):</u> O.FAX_NET_SEPARATION</p> <p><u>Summary:</u></p> <p><i><u>Fax separation</u></i></p> <p>The TOE provides the separation of fax from the Ethernet. The fax functionality is limited to transmitting and receiving user data using fax protocols. The architecture and design provide separation between the analog fax processing board and the network controller. System components that control the analog fax hardware have no functions to access the network</p>				

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale										
	<p>hardware. Faxes from a phone line cannot be sent into the network or influence other resources on the network.</p> <p>The analog fax functions of the TOE support the sending and receiving of fax data. The closed nature of analog fax firmware with its limited functionality does not provide a pathway or support for commands necessary to achieve network access.</p> <p>Sending and receiving of data through the serial fax modem can only occur during an active fax session. A fax session can only be established between two fax modems that successfully negotiate common capabilities such as fax resolution, transmission speed, compression, and format. Fax negotiation and communication uses the T.30 protocol, which is restricted to fax communications. A fax session cannot be negotiated for anything other than a fax transfer, so it is not possible for other components in or out of the system to use the modem for transferring data other than fax data.</p> <p>The analog fax hardware and the firmware that controls the fax hardware do not have the ability to access the Ethernet fax functions. No pathway is provided to the Ethernet interface from the fax. The TOE's analog fax functions only support the sending and receiving of fax data. Fax commands with potential for accessing the Ethernet are not supported by the TOE.</p> <p><u>Fax use cases</u></p> <p>The TOE supports the following fax use cases in the evaluated configuration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fax send • Fax receive • Storing of received faxes <p><u>Fax capabilities</u></p> <p style="text-align: center;">Table 50: Telecommunications acronyms</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Acronym</th> <th>Definition</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CCITT</td> <td>Consultative Committee for International Telephony and Telegraphy</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EIA</td> <td>Electronic Industries Alliance</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ITU-T</td> <td>International Telegraph Union Telecommunication Standardization Sector</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TIA</td> <td>Telecommunications Industry Association</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>The TOE supports the following fax protocols in the evaluated configuration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CCITT/ITU-T Group 3 • CCITT/ITU-T T.30 • TIA/EIA Class 1 • TIA/EIA Class 2 • TIA/EIA Class 2.0 	Acronym	Definition	CCITT	Consultative Committee for International Telephony and Telegraphy	EIA	Electronic Industries Alliance	ITU-T	International Telegraph Union Telecommunication Standardization Sector	TIA	Telecommunications Industry Association
Acronym	Definition										
CCITT	Consultative Committee for International Telephony and Telegraphy										
EIA	Electronic Industries Alliance										
ITU-T	International Telegraph Union Telecommunication Standardization Sector										
TIA	Telecommunications Industry Association										

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale				
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TIA/EIA Class 2.1 <p>The TOE supports the following fax compression methods in the evaluated configuration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) • Modified Huffman (MH) • Modified READ (MR) • Modified Modified READ (MMR) <p>The TOE supports the following fax transmission standards and speeds in the evaluated configuration with a modem speed of up to 33.6 kilobits per second (kbps).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • V.17 at 14,400, 12,000, 9,600, 7,200 bps • V.33 at 14,400, 12,000 bps • V.29 at 9,600, 7,200 bps • V.27 at 4,800, 2,400 bps • V.34 at 33,600, 31,200, 28,800, 26,400, 24,000, 21,600, 19,200, 16,800 bps <p>The TOE supports the following fax resolutions in the evaluated configuration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standard - 200 x 100 dots per inch (dpi) • Fine - 200 x 200 dpi • Superfine - 300 x 300 dpi • Ultrafine - 200 x 400 (receive only) • Ultrafine - 400 x 400 (receive only) <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td> <p><i>The evaluator shall check the TSS to ensure that it describes:</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) <i>The fax interface use cases</i> 2) <i>The capabilities of the fax modem and the supported fax protocols</i> 3) <i>The data that is allowed to be sent or received via the fax interface</i> 4) <i>How the TOE can only be used transmitting or receiving User Data using fax protocols</i> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>These descriptions are provided above.</td> </tr> </table>	AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall check the TSS to ensure that it describes:</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) <i>The fax interface use cases</i> 2) <i>The capabilities of the fax modem and the supported fax protocols</i> 3) <i>The data that is allowed to be sent or received via the fax interface</i> 4) <i>How the TOE can only be used transmitting or receiving User Data using fax protocols</i> 	Resp	These descriptions are provided above.
AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall check the TSS to ensure that it describes:</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) <i>The fax interface use cases</i> 2) <i>The capabilities of the fax modem and the supported fax protocols</i> 3) <i>The data that is allowed to be sent or received via the fax interface</i> 4) <i>How the TOE can only be used transmitting or receiving User Data using fax protocols</i> 				
Resp	These descriptions are provided above.				
<p>FDP_RIP.1(a) (Subset residual information protection)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.IMAGE_OVERWRITE</p> <p>Note: The O.IMAGE_OVERWRITE objective limits the scope of this requirement to field-replaceable nonvolatile storage devices.</p> <p>Summary: User document data are stored on a field-replaceable nonvolatile storage device, specifically a disk drive that is also an SED. This user document data is stored in the form of job files. When a job file is deleted (either automatically by the system or by request of a user), the TOE will overwrite the file.</p> <p>The TOE calls this image overwrite feature "Managing Temporary Job Files." This feature contains three options of which only two are allowed to be used in the evaluated configuration.</p>				

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale				
	<p>This restriction is documented in the [CCECG] section <i>Managing temporary job files</i> and must be enforced by the administrator.</p> <p>The administrator can select between either one of these two allowed options.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Secure Fast Erase (overwrite 1 time) • Secure Sanitize Erase (overwrite 3 times) <p>Secure Fast Erase overwrites a job file once using a static byte value of 0x48. Then the file is unlinked (deallocated) from the file system and the disk blocks comprising the file reassigned to free space in the file system.</p> <p>Secure Sanitize Erase overwrites a job file three times. The first pass uses a static byte value of 0x48. The second pass uses a static byte value of 0xB7. The third pass uses pseudo-random values. Then, the file is unlinked (deallocated) from the file system and the disk blocks comprising the file reassigned to free space in the file system.</p> <p>The third option is called "Non-Secure Fast Erase (no overwrite)." This option must not be selected in the evaluated configuration.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure that the description is comprehensive in describing where image data is stored and how and when it is overwritten.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td> <p>The TOE has one field-replaceable, nonvolatile storage device. User document data is in the form of job files on this storage device. When a job file is deleted (either automatically by the system or by requested of a user), the TOE will overwrite the file.</p> <p>The administrator can select between two options of file overwrite performed by the TOE. The Secure Fast Erase option performs a single pass overwrite using a static value. The Secure Sanitize Erase option performs a three pass overwrite where the first pass uses a static value, the second pass uses a different static value, and the third pass uses pseudo-random values. After the overwrite completes, the file is unlinked (deallocated) from the file system.</p> </td> </tr> </table>	AA	<i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure that the description is comprehensive in describing where image data is stored and how and when it is overwritten.</i>	Resp	<p>The TOE has one field-replaceable, nonvolatile storage device. User document data is in the form of job files on this storage device. When a job file is deleted (either automatically by the system or by requested of a user), the TOE will overwrite the file.</p> <p>The administrator can select between two options of file overwrite performed by the TOE. The Secure Fast Erase option performs a single pass overwrite using a static value. The Secure Sanitize Erase option performs a three pass overwrite where the first pass uses a static value, the second pass uses a different static value, and the third pass uses pseudo-random values. After the overwrite completes, the file is unlinked (deallocated) from the file system.</p>
AA	<i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure that the description is comprehensive in describing where image data is stored and how and when it is overwritten.</i>				
Resp	<p>The TOE has one field-replaceable, nonvolatile storage device. User document data is in the form of job files on this storage device. When a job file is deleted (either automatically by the system or by requested of a user), the TOE will overwrite the file.</p> <p>The administrator can select between two options of file overwrite performed by the TOE. The Secure Fast Erase option performs a single pass overwrite using a static value. The Secure Sanitize Erase option performs a three pass overwrite where the first pass uses a static value, the second pass uses a different static value, and the third pass uses pseudo-random values. After the overwrite completes, the file is unlinked (deallocated) from the file system.</p>				
<p>FIA_AFL.1 (Authentication failure handling)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.USER_I&A</p> <p>Summary: This SFR applies to the Local Device Sign In mechanism (used by the Control Panel, EWS, and REST interfaces). The only account associated with this mechanism is the Device Administrator account.</p> <p>The lockout mechanism uses the following control values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Account lockout maximum attempts • Account lockout interval • Account reset lockout counter interval <p>The account lockout maximum attempts value allows an administrator to control the number of failed authentication attempts on an account before the account is locked. The administrator can choose a value between 3 and 10 inclusively. Consecutive failed authentication attempts using the same authentication credential count as a single failed authentication attempt. The counted failed attempts must happen within the value set for the account reset lockout counter interval</p>				

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale				
	<p>value; otherwise, the maximum attempts counter is reset to zero. When the maximum attempts count has been met, the account is locked for the amount of time specified by the account lockout interval value.</p> <p>The account lockout interval value allows an administrator to control the length of time that the account remains locked. The administrator can choose a value between 60 seconds (1 minute) and 1800 seconds (30 minutes) inclusively in the evaluated configuration.</p> <p>The account reset lockout counter interval value allows an administrator to specify the time (in seconds) in which the failed login attempts must occur before the account lockout maximum attempts counter is reset to zero. This value must be equal to or greater than the account lockout interval value.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of the actions in the case of authentication failure (types of authentication events, the number of unsuccessful authentication attempts, actions to be conducted), which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i></td> </tr> </table> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td> <p>When the administrator specified 3 to 10 authentication failures on an account are met, the account is locked for the period of time specified by the lockout interval. Caveats are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consecutive failed authentication attempts using the same authentication credential count as a single failed authentication attempt. • The failures must occur during the time value specified by the account reset lockout counter interval value; otherwise, the account lockout maximum attempts counter is reset to zero. </td> </tr> </table>	AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of the actions in the case of authentication failure (types of authentication events, the number of unsuccessful authentication attempts, actions to be conducted), which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i>	Resp	<p>When the administrator specified 3 to 10 authentication failures on an account are met, the account is locked for the period of time specified by the lockout interval. Caveats are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consecutive failed authentication attempts using the same authentication credential count as a single failed authentication attempt. • The failures must occur during the time value specified by the account reset lockout counter interval value; otherwise, the account lockout maximum attempts counter is reset to zero.
AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of the actions in the case of authentication failure (types of authentication events, the number of unsuccessful authentication attempts, actions to be conducted), which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i>				
Resp	<p>When the administrator specified 3 to 10 authentication failures on an account are met, the account is locked for the period of time specified by the lockout interval. Caveats are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consecutive failed authentication attempts using the same authentication credential count as a single failed authentication attempt. • The failures must occur during the time value specified by the account reset lockout counter interval value; otherwise, the account lockout maximum attempts counter is reset to zero. 				
<p>FIA_ATD.1 (User attribute definition)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.USER_AUTHORIZATION</p> <p>Summary:</p> <p><u>Control Panel users</u></p> <p>For Internal Authentication (i.e., the Local Device Sign In method), only one account exists in the evaluated configuration: Device Administrator. This account is a built-in account and is permanently assigned the Device Administrator PS which makes its role U.ADMIN. The user identifier is the Display name and the authenticator is a password. The Device Administrator Password's composition requirements are defined in FIA_PMG_EXT.1.</p> <p>For each External Authentication method (i.e., LDAP Sign In and Windows Sign In), the user identifiers and passwords are stored on and verified by the External Authentication server. Also, the network group memberships are stored on the External Authentication server. Because these security attributes are not stored on and maintained by the TOE, they are not listed in FIA_ATD.1.</p> <p>User accounts from External Authentication methods are known as network user accounts. Each network user account can have zero or one PS (i.e., network user PS) associated with it that is used in calculating the user's session PS (i.e., the user's role). These PSs are stored on and</p>				

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale				
	<p>maintained by the TOE. User session PS formulas are provided in FIA_USB.1 and described in the TSS for FIA_USB.1.</p> <p><u>EWS users</u></p> <p>The EWS authentication works very similarly to the Control Panel authentication.</p> <p>For Internal Authentication (i.e., the Local Device Sign In method), only one account exists in the evaluated configuration: Device Administrator. This account is a built-in account and is permanently assigned the Device Administrator PS which makes its role U.ADMIN. It contains a user identifier known as the Display name and a password known as the Device Administrator Password. The Device Administrator Password's composition requirements are defined in FIA_PMG_EXT.1.</p> <p>For each External Authentication method (i.e., LDAP Sign In and Windows Sign In), the user identifiers and passwords are stored on and verified by the External Authentication server. Also, the network group memberships are stored on the External Authentication server. Because these security attributes are not stored on and maintained by the TOE, they are not listed in FIA_ATD.1.</p> <p><u>REST users</u></p> <p>For the REST interface, this interface is an administrator-only interface used to manage the TOE over IPsec.</p> <p>For Internal Authentication, the REST interface supports the Local Device Sign In method which requires the administrator to authenticate using the Device Administrator account. The Display name is used as the identifier and password is used as the authenticator. Both are maintained internally by the TOE. For External Authentication, the REST interface supports the Windows Sign In method which requires the user to be associated with the Device Administrator permission set.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of the user security attributes that the TOE uses to implement the SFR, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i></td> </tr> </table> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>See the Summary section above.</td> </tr> </table>	AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of the user security attributes that the TOE uses to implement the SFR, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i>	Resp	See the Summary section above.
AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of the user security attributes that the TOE uses to implement the SFR, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i>				
Resp	See the Summary section above.				
<p>FIA_PMG_EXT.1 (Password management)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.USER_I&A</p> <p>Summary: The TOE manages the following password.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Device Administrator Password <p>This value is composed of any combination of upper- and lower-case letters, numbers, and the special characters specified in FIA_PMG_EXT.1. Its length is configurable by the administrator and can be set to have a minimum of 15 or more characters. For more information on the TOE's password length management capabilities, see the TSS for FMT_MTD.1.</p> <p>The Device Administrator Password is used by the Control Panel, EWS, and REST interfaces and can be managed through the EWS.</p>				

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale	
	AA	<i>None</i>
	Resp	n/a
<p>FIA_PSK_EXT.1 (Pre-shared key composition)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.COMMS_PROTECTION</p> <p>Summary: The TOE supports IPsec text-based pre-shared keys and accepts bit-based pre-shared keys.</p> <p>The text-based keys can be from 22 characters to 128 characters in length and be composed of any combination of upper- and lower-case letters, numbers, and special characters that include the characters: "!", "@", "#", "\$", "%", "^", "&", "*", "(", and ")". The text-based keys are conditioned using the administrator selectable SHA-1, SHA2-256, or SHA2-512 hash algorithms specified in FCS_COP.1(c).</p> <p>The TOE accepts bit-based pre-shared keys generated outside of the TOE. It does not generate bit-based keys except from the text-based keys mentioned above. It allows the administrator to enter a hexadecimal bit-based pre-shared key. For information on this, see the TSS for FMT_MTD.1.</p>	
	AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure that it states that text-based pre-shared keys of 22 characters are supported, and that the TSS states the conditioning that takes place to transform the text-based pre-shared key from the key sequence entered by the user (e.g., ASCII representation) to the bit string used by IPsec, and that this conditioning is consistent with the first selection in the FIA_PSK_EXT.1.3 requirement. If the assignment is used to specify conditioning, the evaluator will confirm that the TSS describes this conditioning.</i></p> <p><i>If "bit-based pre-shared keys" is selected, the evaluator shall confirm the operational guidance contains instructions for either entering bit-based pre-shared keys for each protocol identified in the requirement, or generating a bit-based pre-shared key (or both). The evaluator shall also examine the TSS to ensure it describes the process by which the bit-based pre-shared keys are generated (if the TOE supports this functionality), and confirm that this process uses the RBG specified in FCS_RBG_EXT.1.</i></p>
	Resp	<p>Text-based keys are 22 to 128 characters in length, composed of the characters described in the Summary above, and are conditioned using SHA-1, SHA2-256, or SHA2-512.</p> <p>Hexadecimal bit-based keys can be entered into the TOE as well.</p>
<p>FIA_UAU.1 (Timing of authentication)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.USER.I&A</p> <p>Summary:</p> <p><u>Control Panel</u></p> <p>From the Control Panel, the user can perform the following actions prior to authentication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> View the Welcome message 	

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reset the session • Select the Sign In button • Select a sign-in method from Sign In screen • View the device status information • Change the display language for the session • Place the device into sleep mode • View or print network connectivity status information • View or print Web Services status information • View help information • View the system time <p>The Control Panel user cannot perform any other TSF-mediated actions until after the user has been successfully authenticated.</p> <p>Users select the sign in method from a menu of sign in methods. The menu options vary depending on the number of External Authentication methods configured for the TOE. The Control Panel supports the following Internal and External Authentication methods in the evaluated configuration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Internal Authentication method <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Local Device Sign In • External Authentication methods <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ LDAP Sign In ◦ Windows Sign In (via Kerberos) <p>The Local Device Sign In method is always available in the TOE. Local Device Sign In contains only one account—the built-in Device Administrator account—in the evaluated configuration. The username (display name) and password are maintained internally by the TOE. At the Control Panel, the user selects the Local Device Sign In method, selects Administrator Access Code (a.k.a. Device Administrator account) from a menu, and is then prompted for the Device Administrator Password.</p> <p>If an LDAP Sign In method is configured, that method will be one of the possible External Authentication methods displayed in the menu. This method allows for the use of an LDAP server, such as the Microsoft Active Directory server, for I&A. Both the username and password are maintained by the LDAP server. The TOE uses the LDAP version 3 protocol over IPsec to communicate to the LDAP server. If a user selects this method, the user must enter a valid LDAP account's username and password to be granted access to the TOE.</p> <p>If a Windows Sign In method is configured, that method will be one of the possible External Authentication methods displayed in the menu. This method allows for the use of a Windows domain server for I&A. Both the username and password are maintained by the Windows domain server. The TOE uses the Kerberos version 5 protocol over IPsec to communicate to the Windows domain server. If a user selects this method, the user must enter a valid Windows domain account's username and password to be granted access to the TOE.</p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale														
	<p><u>Network interfaces</u></p> <p>Most of the client network interfaces protected by IPsec perform authentication. Table 51 provides a list of the available IPsec client interfaces to the TOE, whether or not there's an authentication mechanism associated with the client interface, and a list of TSF-mediated actions prior to authentication, if any.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Table 51: IPsec client interfaces</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>IPsec client interface</th> <th>Authentication?</th> <th>TSF-mediated actions prior to authentication?</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>PJL (a.k.a. P9100)</td> <td>No</td> <td>n/a</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EWS</td> <td>Yes</td> <td>Select a sign in method</td> </tr> <tr> <td>REST</td> <td>Yes</td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Discover a subset of the Web Services <li>• Obtain the X.509v3 certificate on the print engine <li>• Obtain the secure configuration settings on the print engine <li>• Obtain list of installed licenses <li>• Install a digitally signed license <li>• Delete a license (if the license in the payload of the request is digitally signed) <li>• Obtain Web Services registration status <li>• Obtain printer Claim Code for Web Services registration <li>• Set printer Claim Code for Web Services registration </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>			IPsec client interface	Authentication?	TSF-mediated actions prior to authentication?	PJL (a.k.a. P9100)	No	n/a	EWS	Yes	Select a sign in method	REST	Yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Discover a subset of the Web Services <li>• Obtain the X.509v3 certificate on the print engine <li>• Obtain the secure configuration settings on the print engine <li>• Obtain list of installed licenses <li>• Install a digitally signed license <li>• Delete a license (if the license in the payload of the request is digitally signed) <li>• Obtain Web Services registration status <li>• Obtain printer Claim Code for Web Services registration <li>• Set printer Claim Code for Web Services registration
IPsec client interface	Authentication?	TSF-mediated actions prior to authentication?													
PJL (a.k.a. P9100)	No	n/a													
EWS	Yes	Select a sign in method													
REST	Yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Discover a subset of the Web Services <li>• Obtain the X.509v3 certificate on the print engine <li>• Obtain the secure configuration settings on the print engine <li>• Obtain list of installed licenses <li>• Install a digitally signed license <li>• Delete a license (if the license in the payload of the request is digitally signed) <li>• Obtain Web Services registration status <li>• Obtain printer Claim Code for Web Services registration <li>• Set printer Claim Code for Web Services registration 													

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale
	<p><u>PJL over IPsec</u></p> <p>PJL provides all client computers with a non-administrative network interface for submitting print jobs. The PJL interface uses the username provided in the print job as the user identifier for the print job on the TOE. Thus, print jobs stored on the TOE will be owned by this username. This username is by default the username of the human user signed in to the client computer, but it is possible for the human user submitting the print job to provide a different username for the print job. The TOE does not require authentication of this username. Table 51 shows any TSF-mediated actions prior to authentication for this protocol.</p> <p><u>EWS over IPsec</u></p> <p>The EWS interface is a web browser-based administrative interface used to manage the TOE over IPsec. The EWS interface requires the user to sign in using the same sign in method menu options as provided by the Control Panel (i.e., Local Device Sign In, LDAP Sign In, and Windows Sign In when configured for these sign in methods). Table 51 shows any TSF-mediated actions prior to authentication for this protocol.</p> <p><u>REST over IPsec</u></p> <p>The REST interface is an administrative interface used to manage the TOE over IPsec.</p> <p>The REST interface supports the Local Device Sign In method for I&A which requires the administrator to authenticate using the Device Administrator account. The Display name and password are maintained internally by the TOE. For External Authentication, the REST interface supports the Windows Sign In method which requires the user to be associated with the Device Administrator permission set. Table 51 shows any TSF-mediated actions prior to authentication for this protocol.</p> <p><u>Other</u></p> <p>Also see the TSS for FIA_UID.1.</p> <p>Note: On models that support a fax phone line, the fax phone line connection does not support I&A.</p>
AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes all the identification and authentication mechanisms that the TOE provides (e.g., Internal Authentication and authentication by external servers).</i></p>
Resp	<p>The Control Panel provides the Local Device Sign In method as the internal I&A mechanism and provides an LDAP Sign In method and Windows Sign In method as external I&A mechanisms.</p> <p>Over the IPsec channel, EWS provides the same sign in methods as the Control Panel. The REST interface provides the Local Device Sign In and Windows Sign In methods.</p>
AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS identifies all the interfaces to perform identification and authentication (e.g., identification and authentication from operation panel or via Web interfaces).</i></p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale								
	Resp	The Control Panel, EWS, and REST interfaces perform I&A.							
	AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes the protocols (e.g., LDAP, Kerberos, OCSP) used in performing identification and authentication when the TOE exchanges identification and authentication with External Authentication servers.</i>							
	Resp	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>External Authentication server</th> <th>Protocol</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>LDAP server</td> <td>LDAP version 3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Windows domain server</td> <td>Kerberos version 5</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		External Authentication server	Protocol	LDAP server	LDAP version 3	Windows domain server	Kerberos version 5
		External Authentication server	Protocol						
		LDAP server	LDAP version 3						
Windows domain server	Kerberos version 5								
AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of the permitted actions before performing identification and authentication, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i>								
Resp	<p>On the Control Panel, the user can perform the following actions prior to I&A.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • View the Welcome message • Reset the session • Select the Sign In button • Select a sign-in method from Sign In screen • View the device status information • Change the display language for the session • Place the device into sleep mode • View or print network connectivity status information • View or print Web Services status information • View help information • View the system time <p>For EWS, the user can select a sign in method.</p> <p>For REST, the user can perform the following actions prior to I&A:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Discover a subset of the Web Services • Obtain the X.509v3 certificate on the print engine • Obtain the secure configuration settings on the print engine • Obtain list of installed licenses • Install a digitally signed license • Delete a license (if the license in the payload of the request is digitally signed) • Obtain Web Services registration status • Obtain printer Claim Code for Web Services registration • Set printer Claim Code for Web Services registration 								
FIA_UAU.7	Objective(s): O.USER.I&A								

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale
(Protected authentication feedback)	<p>Summary: The Control Panel (for Internal and External Authentication methods) and EWS (for Internal and External Authentication methods) display a dot for each password character typed by the user.</p>
	<p>AA <i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of the authentication information feedback provided to users while the authentication is in progress, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i></p>
	<p>Resp A dot is displayed for each password character typed by the user on the Control Panel and EWS for both Internal and External Authentication methods.</p>
<p>FIA_UID.1 (Timing of identification)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.ADMIN_ROLES, O.USER.I&A</p> <p>Summary: From the Control Panel, the user can perform the following actions prior to identification.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • View the Welcome message • Reset the session • Select the Sign In button • Select a sign-in method from Sign In screen • View the device status information • Change the display language for the session • Place the device into sleep mode • View or print network connectivity status information • View or print Web Services status information • View help information • View or print the Web Services status information • View the help information • View the system time <p>Once the IPsec channel is successfully established, the following interfaces initiate their identification mechanisms. The following shows their TSF-mediated actions prior to identification.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • EWS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Select a sign in method • REST: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Discover a subset of the Web Services ○ Obtain the X.509v3 certificate on the print engine ○ Obtain the secure configuration settings on the print engine ○ Obtain list of installed licenses ○ Install a digitally signed license ○ Delete a license (if the license in the payload of the request is digitally signed) ○ Obtain Web Services registration status

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale				
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Obtain printer Claim Code for Web Services registration <p>Set printer Claim Code for Web Services registration In all cases, the user cannot perform any other TSF-mediated actions than the ones listed above until after the user has been successfully identified.</p> <p>For additional information on I&A, see the TSS for FIA_UAU.1.</p> <p>Note: On models that support a fax phone line, the fax phone line connection does not support I&A.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>It is covered by the assurance activities for FIA_UAU.1.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>n/a</td> </tr> </table>	AA	<i>It is covered by the assurance activities for FIA_UAU.1.</i>	Resp	n/a
AA	<i>It is covered by the assurance activities for FIA_UAU.1.</i>				
Resp	n/a				
<p>FIA_USB.1 (User-subject binding)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.USER.I&A</p> <p>Summary:</p> <p><u><i>Control Panel User Identity Binding</i></u></p> <p>Once a Control Panel user has successfully signed in, a username and a role are bound to the subjects acting on behalf of that user.</p> <p>For Internal Authentication, if the user signs in using the Local Device Sign In method, the bound username will be the Display name. Because the Device Administrator is the only Local Device Sign In account in the evaluated configuration, the username will be the Device Administrator account's Display name.</p> <p>For External Authentication, if the user signs in using the LDAP Sign In method, the bound username will be the user's LDAP username. Similarly, if the user signs in using the Windows Sign In method, the bound username will be the user's Windows username.</p> <p><u><i>Control Panel and EWS User Role Binding</i></u></p> <p>The Control Panel user's role is determined by the user's session permission set (PS) that is bound to the subjects acting on behalf of that user. The Internal Authentication mechanism has one PS per user. The External Authentication mechanisms have one PS per authentication method, zero or one PS per user, and zero or one PS per network group to which the user belongs. For more information on permission sets, see the TSS for FMT_SMR.1.</p> <p>The role associated with the Local Device Sign In method's Device Administrator account is always U.ADMIN. The TOE accomplishes this by setting the Device Administrator's session PS to the Device Administrator PS.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Device Administrator session PS = Device Administrator PS.</i></p> <p>The role associated with an External Authentication method's user account (a.k.a. network user account) can be either U.ADMIN or U.NORMAL. The TOE accomplishes this using various combinations of permission sets (PSs) depending on the existence of certain types of PSs as described in the following paragraphs.</p>				

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale
	<p>External user accounts introduce the concept of network groups. A network group (a.k.a. group) is a collection of zero or more external user accounts. Each External Authentication method defines and maintains its own groups. The members of a group are comprised of the external user accounts from that External Authentication method. An external user account can be associated with zero or more groups.</p> <p>A TOE administrator can associate zero or one PS to each group and zero or one PS to each external user account. These PS associations are stored and maintained on the TOE. A TOE administrator can create, modify, and delete these associations. By default, there are no PS associations for external user accounts and groups. For more information on the TOE's permission set association management, see the TSS for FMT_MSA.1.</p> <p>A PS is associated with each External Authentication method. These associations are also stored and maintained on the TOE. A TOE administrator can modify these associations.</p> <p>The TOE combines these various PSs using one of the following three methods.</p> <p><u>Method #1</u>: If the external user account has a PS association, then the TOE combines the external user account's PS and the Device Guest PS to create the external user's session PS.</p> $User\ session\ PS = External\ user\ account\ PS + Device\ Guest\ PS.$ <p><u>Method #2</u>: If the external user account does not have an associated PS, the TOE obtains the groups to which the external user account is a member. For each of these groups, the TOE looks for matching group-to-PS associations. For each group-to-PS association match, the TOE combines that group's PS with any previously found group PSs. Once all matches have been found, the TOE combines these group PSs with the Device Guest PS to create the external user's session PS.</p> $User\ session\ PS = Network\ group\ PSs + Device\ Guest\ PS.$ <p><u>Method #3</u>: If there are no group-to-PS associations found for the external user account and the external user account does not have an associated PS, then the TOE combines the External Authentication method's PS and the Device Guest PS to create the external user's session PS.</p> $User\ session\ PS = External\ Authentication\ method\ PS + Device\ Guest\ PS.$ <p>An administrator can associate one sign in method to a Control Panel application. This association limits the application to run only when the user signs in using the associated sign in method. For example, if an application is only associated with the LDAP Sign In method, a user must sign in using the LDAP Sign In method in order to run that application. The enforcement of this association is controlled by the "Allow users to choose alternate sign-in methods" function. If this function is enabled, then the sign in method permissions are ignored. If this function is disabled, then the user's session PS calculated above will be reduced to exclude the permissions of applications whose sign in method does not match the sign in method used by the user to sign in.</p> <p><u>Remote User Identity Binding</u></p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale
	<p>Once an IPsec client computer has performed a successful IPsec connection with the TOE, the TOE uses the client's IP address as the client's user identifier for IPsec-related audit records.</p> <p>The EWS and REST interfaces support I&A mechanisms and use some form of username (e.g., Display name, Windows username) in audit records.</p> <p>In the case of EWS, the interface provides the same options as the Control Panel for sign in methods. Because of this, the EWS identity will be the Display name if the Local Device Sign In method is selected by the user, the LDAP username if the LDAP Sign In method is selected by the user, or the Windows username if the Windows Sign In method is selected by the user. From an auditing and access control perspective, the IP address is used by IPsec when generating IPsec-related and network-related audit records. The EWS identity (i.e., Display name, LDAP username, Windows username) is used for all other identity-related purposes such as management-related tasks and audit records and access control enforcement and audit records.</p> <p>In the case of the REST interface, both the Local Sign In method and Windows Sign In method are used for I&A. When authenticating via the Local Sign In Method, the REST identity will be the Display name. When authenticating via the Windows Sign In Method, the REST identity will be the Windows username.</p> <p>From an auditing and access control perspective, the IP address is used by IPsec when generating IPsec-related and network-related audit records. The REST identity is used for all other identity-related purposes such as management-related tasks and audit records and access control enforcement and audit records.</p> <p>Note: The PJI over IPsec interface contains a print job username as part of the print job data. This username is used by the TOE as the owner of the print job object when storing the print job on the TOE. The owner is not the user identity of the client computer. The IP address of the client computer is the user identity of the client computer.</p> <p><u>Remote User Role Binding</u></p> <p>In the case of EWS, the role is determined by the login account used by the user when logging in to the EWS interface.</p> <p>In the case of PJI, the PJI interface only supports unauthenticated users. No specific role exists for these users.</p> <p>In the case of the REST interface, the role is determined by the login account used by the user when logging in to the REST interface.</p> <p><u>Other</u></p> <p>For all TOE I&A, once a user is signed in, the TOE does not provide the user with a way to modify their bound username and role.</p>
AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of rules for associating security attributes with the users who succeed identification and authentication, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i></p>
Resp	<p>See the explanation in the Summary section above.</p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale
<p>FMT_MOF.1 (Management of functions)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.ADMIN_ROLES</p> <p>Summary:</p> <p>Allow users to choose alternate sign-in methods at the product control panel: With the “Allow users to choose alternate sign-in methods at the product control panel” function, the TOE provides an administrator the ability to enable and disable this function. When this function is disabled, it requires the user to sign in using the sign-in method associated with the selected application in order to access that application. This function is restricted to U.ADMIN and can be performed through the EWS interface. For related information, see the TSS for FIA_USB.1.</p> <p>Control Panel Mandatory Sign-in: With the “Control Panel Mandatory Sign-in” function, the TOE provides an administrator the ability to enable and disable this function. This function must be enabled in the evaluated configuration. This function is restricted to U.ADMIN and can be performed through the EWS interface.</p> <p>Windows Sign In: With the Windows Sign In function, the TOE provides an administrator the ability to enable and disable the Windows Sign In method. This function is restricted to U.ADMIN and can be performed through the EWS interface. At least one External Authentication mechanism must be enabled in the evaluated configuration. For related information, see the TSS for FIA_ATD.1 and TSS for FIA_UAU.1.</p> <p>LDAP Sign In: With the LDAP Sign In function, the TOE provides an administrator the ability to enable and disable the LDAP Sign In method. This function is restricted to U.ADMIN and can be performed through the EWS interface. At least one External Authentication mechanism must be enabled in the evaluated configuration. For related information, see the TSS for FIA_ATD.1 and TSS for FIA_UAU.1.</p> <p>Account lockout: With the account lockout function, the TOE provides an administrator the ability to enable and disable the account lockout function of the Device Administrator account. This function must be enabled in the evaluated configuration. This function is restricted to U.ADMIN. The Device Administrator's account lockout function can be enabled and disabled through the EWS interface. For related information, see the TSS for FIA_AFL.1.</p> <p>Enhanced security event logging: With the enhanced security event logging function, the TOE provides an administrator the ability to enable and disable the generation of additional security events. This function must be enabled in the evaluated configuration. This function is restricted to U.ADMIN and can be performed through the EWS interface. For related information, see the TSS for FAU_GEN.1.</p> <p>Managing Temporary Job Files: With this image overwrite function, the TOE provides an administrator the ability to determine which one of the three overwrite options is currently selected (i.e., determine the behavior of the overwrite function) and to modify the selection (i.e., modify the behavior of the overwrite function). In the evaluated configuration, an administrator must select between either Secure Fast Erase or Secure Sanitize Erase. The Non-Secure Fast Erase option must not be selected in the evaluated configuration. This function is restricted to U.ADMIN and can be performed through the EWS interface. For related information, see the TSS for FDP_RIP.1(a).</p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale				
	<p>IPsec: With the IPsec function, the TOE provides an administrator the ability to enable and disable IPsec. IPsec must be enabled in the evaluated configuration. This function is restricted to U.ADMIN and can be performed through the EWS interface. For related information, see the TSS for FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.</p> <p>Automatically synchronize with a Network Time Service: With the "Automatically synchronize with a Network Time Service" function, the TOE provides an administrator the ability to enable and disable NTS. NTS must be enabled in the evaluated configuration. This function is restricted to U.ADMIN and can be performed through the EWS interface. For related information, see the TSS for FPT_STM.1. Also see the management operations for "NTS server configuration data" in the TSS for FMT_MTD.1.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td> <p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of the management functions that the TOE provides as well as user roles that are permitted to manage the functions, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS identifies interfaces to operate the management functions.</i></p> </td> </tr> </table> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>The required information is provided in the Summary section above.</td> </tr> </table>	AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of the management functions that the TOE provides as well as user roles that are permitted to manage the functions, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS identifies interfaces to operate the management functions.</i></p>	Resp	The required information is provided in the Summary section above.
AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of the management functions that the TOE provides as well as user roles that are permitted to manage the functions, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS identifies interfaces to operate the management functions.</i></p>				
Resp	The required information is provided in the Summary section above.				
<p>FMT_MSA.1 (Management of attributes)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.ACCESS_CONTROL, O.USER_AUTHORIZATION</p> <p>Summary: Depending on the interface used to access the TOE, the security attributes used by the TOE's access control mechanism described in FDP_ACF.1 vary. The easiest way to describe these attributes is to split them into the following categories.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Control Panel and EWS subject attributes (identities and roles) • Job Storage object attributes <p><u><i>Control Panel and EWS identities</i></u></p> <p>The TOE's access control mechanism uses the identities supplied by the Control Panel and EWS interfaces to control access to objects. This makes identities a subject security attribute of the access control mechanism.</p> <p>The TOE supports both Internal and External Authentication mechanisms in the evaluated configuration.</p> <p>Account identity (Internal Authentication mechanism): The Internal Authentication mechanism contains only one account in the evaluated configuration. This account is the predefined Device Administrator account. This account has a Display name (i.e., subject identity). This Display name could be used by the access control mechanism to compare job ownership and fax ownership identities, but since this account has the Device Administrator permission set permanently associated with it, this account is granted administrative access by default. The TOE does not provide any management operations for this account's identity. This is reflected in FMT_MSA.1 in Table 31. Because there are no management operations, the authorized roles entry is marked as not applicable (n/a) in Table 31. There is no default value</p>				

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale
	<p>property for the Display name because the account is predefined, thus, Table 31 shows this as not applicable (n/a). Similarly, no role can override the default value.</p> <p>Account identity (External Authentication mechanisms): The External Authentication mechanisms are part of the Operational Environment. An external account's identity (a.k.a. user name or account name) is used as a subject security attribute to grant or deny access to access-controlled objects (a.k.a. jobs) on the TOE. The external account identities are maintained by and on the External Authentication mechanisms. The TOE does not support any management operations on the account identities maintained by the External Authentication mechanisms as shown in FMT_MSA.1 in Table 31. Because the TOE has no control over these external account identities, there is no default value property (marked as n/a in Table 31) and no default value to override, thus, no role can override the default value.</p> <p><u>Control Panel and EWS roles</u></p> <p>The TOE's access control mechanism also uses permission sets to control access to objects on the TOE. Permission sets are used to determine user roles on the TOE. The TSS for FMT_SMR.1 contains an explanation of permission sets. Permission sets can be associated with internal user accounts, external user accounts (network users), network groups, and to External Authentication mechanisms. When a user logs in via the Control Panel or EWS, the user's session permission set is calculated by the TOE based on the rules described in the TSS for FIA_USB.1. The user's session permission set is used to determine a user's access to access-controlled objects (a.k.a. jobs) on the TOE.</p> <p>Device Administrator permission set permissions: For the Device Administrator permission set permissions, the TOE provides the "view" management operation. This management operation is restricted to U.ADMIN. This permission set comes predefined in the TOE. Its default value property is considered permissive because its predefined value allows access to everything. Because this value is predefined, there is no default value override role associated with it.</p> <p>Device User and Device Guest permission set permissions: For the Device User permission set permissions and the Device Guest permission set permissions, the TOE provides the "modify and view" management operations. These management operations are restricted to U.ADMIN. These permission sets come predefined in the TOE. Their default value properties are considered restrictive because their predefined values are more restrictive than the Device Administrator permission set. Because these values are predefined, there is no default value override role associated with them.</p> <p>Custom permission set permissions: For custom permission set permissions, the TOE provides the "create, modify, delete, and view" management operations. These management operations are restricted to U.ADMIN. A custom permission set's default value property is considered restrictive because its initial value upon creation is an empty permission set. This default value property cannot be overridden, therefore, there is no role that can override this default value.</p> <p><u>Job Storage ownerships</u></p> <p>Ownership (job owner, fax owner) of Job Storage objects is assigned as the object enters the TOE. The TOE does not provide a method to modify the ownership of an object after the object is created. Only authenticated users can access the Job Storage area.</p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale				
	<p>Job owner: For job ownership (excluding receive fax ownership), the TOE provides the "view" ownership management operation. This operation is available to the job owner and U.ADMIN. There is no default value property for a non-receive fax job. The owner is either a Control Panel user or it is the owner specified in a print job submitted over the PJI interface. Because there is no default value property, there is no role that can override the default value property.</p> <p>Fax owner: For receive fax ownership, the TOE provides the "view" ownership management operation. This operation is available to U.ADMIN only. By default, all receive faxes are owned by the Device Administrator account. This default value property is considered restrictive because only a U.ADMIN can access a receive fax job. This default value property cannot be overridden, therefore, there is no role that can override this default value.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of possible operations for security attributes and given roles to those security attributes, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>n/a</td> </tr> </table>	AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of possible operations for security attributes and given roles to those security attributes, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i>	Resp	n/a
AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of possible operations for security attributes and given roles to those security attributes, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i>				
Resp	n/a				
<p>FMT_MSA.3 (Initialization of attributes)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.ACCESS_CONTROL, O.USER_AUTHORIZATION</p> <p>Summary: The descriptions have been provided in the TSS for FMT_MSA.1.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes mechanisms to generate security attributes which have properties of default values, which are defined in the SFR.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>The descriptions have been provided in the TSS for FMT_MSA.1.</td> </tr> </table>	AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes mechanisms to generate security attributes which have properties of default values, which are defined in the SFR.</i>	Resp	The descriptions have been provided in the TSS for FMT_MSA.1.
AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes mechanisms to generate security attributes which have properties of default values, which are defined in the SFR.</i>				
Resp	The descriptions have been provided in the TSS for FMT_MSA.1.				
<p>FMT_MTD.1 (Management of TSF data)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.ACCESS_CONTROL</p> <p>Summary:</p> <p><u>TSF Data owned by U.NORMAL or associated with Documents or jobs owned by a U.NORMAL</u></p> <p>None: U.NORMAL doesn't own any TSF Data on the TOE. The security attributes associated with Documents or jobs owned by U.NORMAL are covered by FMT_MSA.1.</p> <p><u>List of TSF Data not owned by U.NORMAL</u></p> <p>Device Administrator password: For the Device Administrator password, the TOE provides the "change" operation. The change operation allows a U.ADMIN to change the Device Administrator's password. This operation is restricted to U.ADMIN. For related information, see the TSS for FIA_PMG_EXT.1.</p> <p>Permission set associations (except on the Device Administrator account): For all permission set associations for any external user account, network group, and External Authentication mechanism, the TOE provides the "add, delete, change, and view" management operations. These management operations are restricted to U.ADMIN. For related information, see the TSS for FDP_ACF.1 and TSS for FMT_MSA.1.</p>				

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale
	<p>Permission set associations (only on the Device Administrator account): The Device Administrator account is the only internal, built-in account in the evaluated configuration. This account has the Device Administrator permission set permanently associated with it. The only management operation provided for the Device Administrator account's permission set association is the "view" operation. This can only be performed by a U.ADMIN (including the Device Administrator). For related information, see the TSS for FDP_ACF.1 and TSS for FMT_MSA.1.</p> <p>Note: Although audit records are TSF Data not owned by U.NORMAL, the TOE does not provide the ability to management audit records.</p> <p><u>List of software, firmware, and related configuration data</u></p> <p>IPsec CA and identity certificates: For the IPsec CA certificates, the TOE provides the "import and delete" operations through the EWS interface. The import operation adds a CA certificate to the TOE. The delete operation removes the selected CA certificate from the TOE. These operations are restricted to U.ADMIN. The TOE may contain one or more CA certificates.</p> <p>For the IPsec identity certificates, the TOE provides the "import and delete" operations for CA-signed identity certificates through the EWS interface. The import operation adds a CA-signed identity certificate to the TOE. The delete operation removes the CA-signed identity certificate from the TOE. These operations are restricted to U.ADMIN.</p> <p>The TOE initially comes with a self-signed identity certificate for IPsec. This self-signed identity certificate is generated during manufacturing of the TOE and cannot be deleted. This self-signed identity certificate must not be used in the evaluated configuration. Instead, the [CCECG] section <i>Certificates</i> instructs the U.ADMIN to import a CA-signed identity certificate and to set this CA-signed identity certificate as the TOE's network identity certificate. The TOE only allows one certificate to be its network identity certificate.</p> <p>IPsec pre-shared keys: For the IPsec pre-shared keys, the TOE provides the "set and change" operations. The set operation is used to set an initial pre-shared key value. The change operation allows an administrator to change the pre-shared key value. This operation is restricted to U.ADMIN. The hash algorithm used on the pre-shared key is selectable. The pre-shared keys are part of the IPsec policy. For related information on pre-shared keys, see the TSS for FIA_PSK_EXT.1.</p> <p>NTS server configuration data: For the NTS server settings, the TOE provides the "change" operation. The change operation allows an administrator to change the configuration data associated with the NTS server. This operation is restricted to U.ADMIN. For related information, see the TSS for FPT_STM.1. The NTS server function must be enabled for the NTS server configuration data to have an effect. For more information on the NTS server enablement, see the "Automatically synchronize with a Network Time Service" function in the TSS for FMT_MOF.1.</p> <p>Minimum password length: For the minimum password length settings, the TOE provides the "change" operation. The TOE provides minimum password length setting for the Device</p>

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale				
	<p>Administrator account. This operation is restricted to U.ADMIN. For related information, see the TSS for FIA_PMG_EXT.1.</p> <p>Account lockout maximum attempts: For the account lockout maximum attempts value, the TOE provides the "change" operation. This value allows an administrator to control the number of failed login attempts before the account is locked. The administrator can choose a value between 3 and 10 inclusively. Consecutive failed authentication attempts using the same authentication credential count as a single failed authentication attempt. The counted failed attempts must happen within the value set for the account reset lockout counter interval value; otherwise, the maximum attempts counter is reset. The account lockout maximum attempt value affects the Device Administrator account. The change operation is restricted to U.ADMIN. For more information on account lockout in general, see the TSS for FIA_AFL.1. The account lockout function must be enabled for the account lockout maximum attempts value to have an effect. For information on the account lockout enablement function, see the TSS for FMT_MOF.1.</p> <p>Account lockout interval: For the account lockout interval value, the TOE provides the "change" operation. This value allows an administrator to control the length of time that the account remains locked. The administrator can choose a value between 60 and 1800 seconds inclusively in the evaluated configuration. The account lockout interval value affects the Device Administrator account. The change operation is restricted to U.ADMIN. For more information on account lockout in general, see the TSS for FIA_AFL.1. The account lockout function must be enabled for the account lockout interval value to have an effect. For information on the account lockout enablement function, see the TSS for FMT_MOF.1.</p> <p>Account reset lockout counter interval: For the account reset lockout counter interval value, the TOE provides the "change" operation. This value allows an administrator to specify the time (in seconds) in which the failed login attempts must occur before the account lockout maximum attempts counter is reset. This value must be equal to or greater than the account lockout interval value. The account reset lockout counter interval value affects the Device Administrator account. The change operation is restricted to U.ADMIN. For more information on account lockout in general, see the TSS for FIA_AFL.1. The account lockout function must be enabled for the account reset lockout counter interval value to have an effect. For information on the account lockout enablement function, see the TSS for FMT_MOF.1.</p> <p>Session inactivity timeout: For the session inactivity timeout, the TOE provides the "change" operation. The change operation allows an administrator to change the amount of time of inactivity before automatically logging out the user from an interactive session. This timeout works for both Control Panel and EWS sessions. The Control Panel and EWS interfaces have independent session inactivity timeout values. The change operation is restricted to U.ADMIN for both interfaces. For related information, see the TSS for FTA_SSL.3.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td>None</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>n/a</td> </tr> </table>	AA	None	Resp	n/a
AA	None				
Resp	n/a				
FMT_SMF.1	Objective(s): O.ACCESS_CONTROL, O.ADMIN_ROLES, O.USER_AUTHORIZATION				

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale	
(Management functions)	<p>Summary: Table 33 in FMT_SMF.1 provides a mapping of each management function to its respective management SFR, to its objectives, and to the respective management SFR's TSS page. The SFR's TSS provides a more detailed description of the matching management function.</p> <p>The following objectives do not have security management functionality defined for them in this ST.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • O.FAX_NET_SEPARATION • O.KEY_MATERIAL • O.STORAGE_ENCRYPTION • O.TSF_SELF_TEST • O.UPDATE_VERIFICATION 	
	AA	<p>The evaluator shall check the TSS to ensure that the management functions are consistent with the assignment in the SFR.</p>
	Resp	n/a
FMT_SMR.1 (Security roles)	<p>Objective(s): O.ACCESS_CONTROL, O.ADMIN_ROLES, O.USER_AUTHORIZATION</p> <p>Summary: The TOE supports two roles:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • U.ADMIN • U.NORMAL <p>The TOE can associate users with roles, but there is an account that is always associated with a specific role. Specifically, the Device Administrator account (available through the Control Panel, EWS, and REST interfaces) is of type U.ADMIN.</p> <p><i>Permission sets</i></p> <p>The TOE implements roles through the use of permission sets. Permission sets are used to determine which Control Panel applications a Control Panel user can access and which EWS interfaces an EWS user can access. A permission set contains a list of allowed permissions where each permission determines access to a single Control Panel application or a single EWS interface.</p> <p>The TOE contains the following built-in permission sets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Device Administrator—Grants administrative capabilities • Device User—Grants typical user capabilities • Device Guest—Grants capabilities to non-signed in users <p>These built-in permission sets cannot be renamed or deleted. The Device Administrator permission set cannot be modified, but an administrator can modify the permissions in the Device User and Device Guest permission sets. In the evaluated configuration, the Device Guest permission set is empty (i.e., contains no permissions) by default. (Device Guest is mentioned here because its definition is used in the TSS for FIA_USB.1.)</p>	

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale				
	<p>As an alternative to built-in permission sets, administrators can create custom permission sets that allow an administrator to better map the TOE's permissions to the usage model of their organization. Administrators can also modify and delete any existing custom permission sets. By default, the TOE comes with no custom permission sets.</p> <p>Besides user accounts, permission sets can also be assigned to sign in methods—Local Device Sign In, LDAP Sign In, and Windows Sign In—and network groups to which an external user account is a member. (A network group is a collection of external user accounts located on a single External Authentication mechanism. The network group and group members are defined on the External Authentication mechanism.)</p> <p>When a user logs in to the TOE, their session permission set is determined by a combination of factors. For more details on how permission sets are determined, see the TSS for FIA_USB.1.</p> <p>All permission sets are stored and maintained locally on the TOE. This means that the permission sets for the internal user accounts, external user accounts, authentication mechanisms, and network groups are all stored and maintained locally on the TOE.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of security related roles that the TOE maintains, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>n/a</td> </tr> </table>	AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of security related roles that the TOE maintains, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i>	Resp	n/a
AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of security related roles that the TOE maintains, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i>				
Resp	n/a				
<p>FPT_KYP_EX T.1 (Key chain key protection)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.KEY_MATERIAL</p> <p>Summary: As per FCS_KYC_EXT.1, the key chain is a key chain of one containing only the BEV. The BEV is stored in non-field replaceable nonvolatile storage (SPI flash and EEPROM) located inside the TOE. For more information on the key chain and BEV, see the TSS for FCS_KYC_EXT.1.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td>None</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>n/a</td> </tr> </table>	AA	None	Resp	n/a
AA	None				
Resp	n/a				
<p>FPT_SKP_EX T.1 (Key viewing protection)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.COMMS_PROTECTION</p> <p>Summary: The TOE is a closed system and does not provide an interface to read pre-shared keys, symmetric keys, or private keys. As a closed system, it does not allow administrators to read memory or to access storage directly.</p> <p>The TOE's EWS provides an interface to enter IPsec pre-shared key values. This interface does not allow the administrator to query the current pre-shared key value. No other external interfaces allow for the entering or reading of pre-shared keys.</p> <p>The TOE stores the IPsec pre-shared keys in a file on the field-replaceable SED. This file is not accessible through any interface. For more details on the IPsec pre-shared keys, see the TSS for FCS_CKM.4, TSS for FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1, and TSS for FIA_PSK_EXT.1.</p> <p>The SED drive-lock password (a.k.a. BEV) can be considered a symmetric key. This password is stored in cleartext in SPI flash and EEPROM, but the TOE does not provide an interface to</p>				

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale				
	<p>view this key or to access SPI flash or EEPROM. For more details on the SED drive-lock password, see the TSS for FCS_KYC_EXT.1.</p> <p>Ephemeral asymmetric and symmetric keys created and used in IPsec sessions are inaccessible by any user because the TOE does not provide a user interface to read memory.</p> <p>The TOE's private asymmetric keys found in X.509v3 certificates (used by IPsec) can be imported by the TOE, but the EWS interface does not display the private keys contained in these certificates.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to determine that it details how any pre-shared keys, symmetric keys, and private keys are stored and that they are unable to be viewed through an interface designed specifically for that purpose, as outlined in the application note. If these values are not stored in plaintext, the TSS shall describe how they are protected/obscured.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>The TOE is a closed system and does not provide an interface to read pre-shared keys, symmetric keys, or private keys. The description above provides extended details.</td> </tr> </table>	AA	<i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to determine that it details how any pre-shared keys, symmetric keys, and private keys are stored and that they are unable to be viewed through an interface designed specifically for that purpose, as outlined in the application note. If these values are not stored in plaintext, the TSS shall describe how they are protected/obscured.</i>	Resp	The TOE is a closed system and does not provide an interface to read pre-shared keys, symmetric keys, or private keys. The description above provides extended details.
AA	<i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to determine that it details how any pre-shared keys, symmetric keys, and private keys are stored and that they are unable to be viewed through an interface designed specifically for that purpose, as outlined in the application note. If these values are not stored in plaintext, the TSS shall describe how they are protected/obscured.</i>				
Resp	The TOE is a closed system and does not provide an interface to read pre-shared keys, symmetric keys, or private keys. The description above provides extended details.				
<p>FPT_STM.1 (Time stamps)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.AUDIT</p> <p>Summary: Although [HCDPP] only maps O.AUDIT to FPT_STM.1, it is worth noting that reliable timestamps are also used by O.COMMS_PROTECTION and O.UPDATE_VERIFICATION when validating the validity period of certificates and by O.USER_I&A when performing session inactivity timeouts and authentication failure handling.</p> <p>The TOE contains an internal system clock that is used to generate reliable timestamps. The TOE requires the use of an NTS service to keep the internal system clock's time synchronized. Only administrators can manage the system clock and the TOE's configuration of NTS.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes mechanisms that provide reliable time stamps.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>The TOE contains an internal system clock that is synchronized using an NTS.</td> </tr> </table>	AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes mechanisms that provide reliable time stamps.</i>	Resp	The TOE contains an internal system clock that is synchronized using an NTS.
AA	<i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes mechanisms that provide reliable time stamps.</i>				
Resp	The TOE contains an internal system clock that is synchronized using an NTS.				

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale				
<p>FPT_TST_EX T.1 (TSF testing)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.TSF_SELF_TEST</p> <p>Summary: The TOE contains TSF testing functionality called Whitelisting to help ensure only authentic, known-good firmware files that have not been tampered with are loaded into memory.</p> <p>The TOE supports dm-verity to protect the integrity of the SquashFS file system firmware images. On each boot, the TOE verifies the digital signature of the dm-verity hash tree corresponding to a SquashFS file system image using RSA-2048 with SHA2-256. During operation, the TOE verifies the integrity of a file system block before loading it into memory.</p> <p>If the digital signature verification fails, or the integrity check of a file system block fails, Whitelisting will reboot the HCD, and the Basic Input/Output System (BIOS) will hold on boot with an error message displayed on the Control Panel UI.</p> <p>Whitelisting uses the HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1 implementation for both the RSA 2048-bit and SHA2-256 algorithms. For additional details on these algorithms, see the TSS for FCS_COP.1(b) and TSS for FCS_COP.1(c).</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td><i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure that it details the self-tests that are run by the TSF on start-up; this description should include an outline of what the tests are actually doing (e.g., rather than saying "memory is tested", a description similar to "memory is tested by writing a value to each memory location and reading it back to ensure it is identical to what was written" shall be used). The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS makes an argument that the tests are sufficient to demonstrate that the TSF is operating correctly.</i></td> </tr> </table> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td>The TOE performs Whitelisting of the SquashFS file system firmware images while booting. If digital signature verification fails of a dm-verity hash tree corresponding to any of the SquashFS file system firmware images, or the integrity check of file system block fails, the TOE reboots and the BIOS will hold on boot with an error message displayed on the Control Panel UI. More detail is provided above.</td> </tr> </table>	AA	<i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure that it details the self-tests that are run by the TSF on start-up; this description should include an outline of what the tests are actually doing (e.g., rather than saying "memory is tested", a description similar to "memory is tested by writing a value to each memory location and reading it back to ensure it is identical to what was written" shall be used). The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS makes an argument that the tests are sufficient to demonstrate that the TSF is operating correctly.</i>	Resp	The TOE performs Whitelisting of the SquashFS file system firmware images while booting. If digital signature verification fails of a dm-verity hash tree corresponding to any of the SquashFS file system firmware images, or the integrity check of file system block fails, the TOE reboots and the BIOS will hold on boot with an error message displayed on the Control Panel UI. More detail is provided above.
AA	<i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure that it details the self-tests that are run by the TSF on start-up; this description should include an outline of what the tests are actually doing (e.g., rather than saying "memory is tested", a description similar to "memory is tested by writing a value to each memory location and reading it back to ensure it is identical to what was written" shall be used). The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS makes an argument that the tests are sufficient to demonstrate that the TSF is operating correctly.</i>				
Resp	The TOE performs Whitelisting of the SquashFS file system firmware images while booting. If digital signature verification fails of a dm-verity hash tree corresponding to any of the SquashFS file system firmware images, or the integrity check of file system block fails, the TOE reboots and the BIOS will hold on boot with an error message displayed on the Control Panel UI. More detail is provided above.				
<p>FPT_TUD_EX T.1 (Trusted update)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.UPDATE_VERIFICATION</p> <p>Summary: The TOE's firmware can be updated by an administrator by downloading an update image and installing it on the TOE.</p> <p>Each update image is digitally signed by the HCD manufacturer using the RSA 2048-bit and SHA2-256 algorithms. Each HCD has a factory-installed public key certificate from HP used by the TOE for verifying the update image's digital signature.</p> <p>Once the update image is downloaded from the kiosk and loaded onto the Administrative Computer, the update image can be uploaded to the TOE through the TOE's EWS interface. Once uploaded, the TOE performs digital signature verification on each update image prior to installing using the RSA 2048-bit and SHA2-256 algorithms and the factory installed certificate. If the TOE's signature verification fails, the TOE won't allow the update to proceed. The TOE uses the HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1 implementation of these algorithms. The RSA 2048-bit algorithm is defined in FCS_COP.1(b). The SHA2-256 hash algorithm is defined</p>				

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale				
	<p>in FCS_COP.1(c). The [CCECG] section <i>Updating TOE firmware</i> describes the steps to update the TOE.</p> <p>The current version of both the System firmware and the Jetdirect Inside firmware can be obtained through the following interfaces.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Control Panel • EWS <p>How to obtain the firmware versions using the EWS is described in the [CCECG] section <i>Check version of installed TOE firmware</i>.</p> <p>Note: The HP Inc. Software Depot kiosk provides a SHA2-256 published hash of the update image and a Windows OS utility program that can be downloaded and used to verify the hash. Once downloaded, the update image can be verified on a separate computer prior to installation on the TOE using the published hash and the Windows OS utility program. Because the published hash verification is not performed by the TSF, the SHA2-256 published hash verification method is excluded from this SFR.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td> <p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of mechanisms that verify software for update when performing updates, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS identifies interfaces for administrators to obtain the current version of the TOE as well as interfaces to perform updates.</i></p> </td> </tr> </table> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td> <p>The TOE uses a digital signature to verify update images. The signature uses RSA 2048-bit and SHA2-256. The public key certificate used to validate the signatures is factory-installed on the TOE.</p> <p>The TOE's update images can be downloaded from the HP Inc. Software Depot kiosk and installed using the TOE's EWS interface in the evaluated configuration.</p> <p>The current version of both the System firmware and the Jetdirect Inside firmware can be obtained through the following interfaces.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Control Panel • EWS </td> </tr> </table>	AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of mechanisms that verify software for update when performing updates, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS identifies interfaces for administrators to obtain the current version of the TOE as well as interfaces to perform updates.</i></p>	Resp	<p>The TOE uses a digital signature to verify update images. The signature uses RSA 2048-bit and SHA2-256. The public key certificate used to validate the signatures is factory-installed on the TOE.</p> <p>The TOE's update images can be downloaded from the HP Inc. Software Depot kiosk and installed using the TOE's EWS interface in the evaluated configuration.</p> <p>The current version of both the System firmware and the Jetdirect Inside firmware can be obtained through the following interfaces.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Control Panel • EWS
AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS contains a description of mechanisms that verify software for update when performing updates, which is consistent with the definition of the SFR.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS identifies interfaces for administrators to obtain the current version of the TOE as well as interfaces to perform updates.</i></p>				
Resp	<p>The TOE uses a digital signature to verify update images. The signature uses RSA 2048-bit and SHA2-256. The public key certificate used to validate the signatures is factory-installed on the TOE.</p> <p>The TOE's update images can be downloaded from the HP Inc. Software Depot kiosk and installed using the TOE's EWS interface in the evaluated configuration.</p> <p>The current version of both the System firmware and the Jetdirect Inside firmware can be obtained through the following interfaces.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Control Panel • EWS 				
<p>FTA_SSL.3 (Interactive session termination)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.USER_I&A</p> <p>Summary: This SFR applies to the interactive sessions for the Control Panel and EWS. The TOE's REST interfaces do not support the concept of sessions.</p> <p><u><i>Control Panel</i></u></p> <p>The TOE supports an inactivity timeout for Control Panel sessions. If a signed in user is inactive for longer than the specified period, the user is automatically signed off of the TOE. The inactivity period is configurable by the administrator via the EWS (HTTP) and Control Panel interfaces. A single Control Panel inactivity period setting exists per TOE. This setting is separate from the EWS setting. For more information on configuring the Control Panel's session timeout, see the TSS for FMT_MTD.1.</p>				

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale					
	<p><u>EWS</u></p> <p>The TOE supports an inactivity timeout for EWS interactive sessions. The EWS session timeout setting is used to set the inactivity timeout period. This setting is configurable via the EWS interface. This setting is separate from the Control Panel setting. For more information on configuring the EWS's session timeout, see the TSS for FMT_MTD.1.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td> <p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes the types of user sessions to be terminated (e.g., user sessions via operation panel or Web interfaces) after a specified period of user inactivity.</i></p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td> <p>All Control Panel and EWS sessions support session termination. Both have administratively configurable timeout periods.</p> </td> </tr> </table>		AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes the types of user sessions to be terminated (e.g., user sessions via operation panel or Web interfaces) after a specified period of user inactivity.</i></p>	Resp	<p>All Control Panel and EWS sessions support session termination. Both have administratively configurable timeout periods.</p>
AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes the types of user sessions to be terminated (e.g., user sessions via operation panel or Web interfaces) after a specified period of user inactivity.</i></p>					
Resp	<p>All Control Panel and EWS sessions support session termination. Both have administratively configurable timeout periods.</p>					
<p>FTP_ITC.1 (Trusted channel)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.AUDIT, O.COMMS_PROTECTION</p> <p>Summary: The TOE uses IPsec to provide a trusted communications channel between itself and all authorized IT entities. Each channel is logically distinct from other communication channels and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data from disclosure and detection of modification of the channel data.</p> <p>The TOE provides and initiates trusted communication channels to the following authorized IT entities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • authentication server • DNS server • FTP server • NTS server • SharePoint server • SMB server • SMTP server • syslog server (audit server) • WINS server <p>For more information on IPsec, see the TSS for FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>AA</td> <td> <p><i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to determine that, for all communications with authorized IT entities identified in the requirement, each communications mechanism is identified in terms of the allowed protocols for that IT entity. The evaluator shall also confirm that all protocols listed in the TSS are specified and included in the requirements in the ST. The evaluator shall confirm that the operational guidance contains instructions for establishing the allowed protocols with each authorized IT entity, and that it contains recovery instructions should a connection be unintentionally broken.</i></p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resp</td> <td> <p>All trusted communications channels to authorized IT entities use IPsec.</p> </td> </tr> </table>		AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to determine that, for all communications with authorized IT entities identified in the requirement, each communications mechanism is identified in terms of the allowed protocols for that IT entity. The evaluator shall also confirm that all protocols listed in the TSS are specified and included in the requirements in the ST. The evaluator shall confirm that the operational guidance contains instructions for establishing the allowed protocols with each authorized IT entity, and that it contains recovery instructions should a connection be unintentionally broken.</i></p>	Resp	<p>All trusted communications channels to authorized IT entities use IPsec.</p>
AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to determine that, for all communications with authorized IT entities identified in the requirement, each communications mechanism is identified in terms of the allowed protocols for that IT entity. The evaluator shall also confirm that all protocols listed in the TSS are specified and included in the requirements in the ST. The evaluator shall confirm that the operational guidance contains instructions for establishing the allowed protocols with each authorized IT entity, and that it contains recovery instructions should a connection be unintentionally broken.</i></p>					
Resp	<p>All trusted communications channels to authorized IT entities use IPsec.</p>					

TOE SFRs	TOE SFR compliance rationale	
<p>FTP_TRP.1(a) (Administrator trusted path)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.COMMS_PROTECTION</p> <p>Summary: The TOE uses IPsec to provide a trusted communication path between itself and remote administrators. Each path is logically distinct from other communication paths and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the communicated data from disclosure and detection of modification of the communicated data.</p> <p>The following interfaces are the remote administrative interfaces of the TOE in the evaluated configuration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • EWS (via a web browser) • REST <p>For more information on IPsec, see the TSS for FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.</p>	
	AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to determine that the methods of remote TOE administration are indicated, along with how those communications are protected. The evaluator shall also confirm that all protocols listed in the TSS in support of TOE administration are consistent with those specified in the requirement, and are included in the requirements in the ST.</i></p>
	Resp	<p>All remote administrative interfaces use IPsec. The remote administrative interfaces are EWS and REST.</p>
<p>FTP_TRP.1(b) (User trusted path)</p>	<p>Objective(s): O.COMMS_PROTECTION</p> <p>Summary: The TOE uses IPsec to provide a trusted communication path between itself and remote, non-administrative users. Each path is logically distinct from other communication paths and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the communicated data from disclosure and detection of modification of the communicated data.</p> <p>The TOE supports the connection of multiple remote non-administrative users. The following interface is the remote non-administrative interface of the TOE in the evaluated configuration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PJL <p>For more information on IPsec, see the TSS for FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.</p>	
	AA	<p><i>The evaluator shall examine the TSS to determine that the methods of remote TOE access for non-administrative users are indicated, along with how those communications are protected.</i></p> <p><i>The evaluator shall also confirm that all protocols listed in the TSS in support of remote TOE access are consistent with those specified in the requirement, and are included in the requirements in the ST.</i></p>
	Resp	<p>All remote non-administrative users connect through the PJL interface. The TOE requires all PJL connections to use IPsec.</p>

7.1.2 CAVP Certificates

Table 52 contains a complete list of cryptographic operations and their CAVP certificates claimed in this ST. It also includes the information required to satisfy [CCEVS-PL05].

The CAVP operational environment is the same for all cryptographic implementations:

- OS: Linux 4.9.180
- Processor: ARM Cortex-A72

Table 52: CAVP certificates

Implementation	Usage	SFR	Standard and operation	CAVP certificate
HP FutureSmart Firmware QuickSec 7.3 Cryptographic Module	IKEv1	FCS_CKM.1(a)	[SP800-56A-Rev3] KAS FFC SSC DH (dhEphem) KAS Roles: Initiator, Responder Groups: MODP-2048, MODP-3072 Prerequisite: SHS #A2049, DSA #A2049, DRBG #A2049	#A2049
			[FIPS186-4] DSA L=2048, N=224; L=2048, N=256; L=3072, N=256 Prerequisite: SHS #A2049, DRBG #A2049	#A2049
			[SP800-56A-Rev3] KAS ECC SSC Ephemeral Unified: KAS Roles: Initiator, Responder Curves: P-256, P-384, P-521 Prerequisite: SHS #A2049, ECDSA #A2049, DRBG #A2049	#A2049
			[FIPS186-4]	#A2049

Implementation	Usage	SFR	Standard and operation	CAVP certificate
			ECDSA Key Pair Gen: Curves: P-256, P-384, P-521 Prerequisite: SHS #A2049, DRBG #A2049	
		FCS_COP.1(a)	[FIPS197] (AES) and [SP800-38A] (CBC, ECB) <u>AES-CBC</u> Modes: Decrypt, encrypt Key lens: 128, 256 (bits) <u>AES-ECB</u> Modes: Encrypt Key lens: 256 (bits)	#A2049
		FCS_COP.1(b)	[FIPS186-4] <u>RSA 186-4</u> <i>Signature generation PKCS1.5</i> Mod 2048 SHA: SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512 Mod 3072 SHA SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512 <i>Signature verification PKCS1.5</i> Mod 2048 SHA SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512 Mod 3072 SHA SHA-1, SHA2-256,	#A2049

Implementation	Usage	SFR	Standard and operation	CAVP certificate
			SHA2-384, SHA2-512 Prerequisite: SHS #A2049, DRBG #A2049	
		FCS_COP.1(c)	[FIPS180-4] SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512	#A2049
		FCS_COP.1(g)	[FIPS198-1] HMAC-SHA-1, HMAC-SHA2-256, HMAC-SHA2-384, HMAC-SHA2-512 Prerequisite: SHS #A2049	#A2049
		FCS_RBG_EXT.1	[SP800-90A-Rev1] CTR_DRBG(AES) <u>Counter</u> Modes: AES-256 (Uses AES-ECB-256) Prerequisite: AES #A2049	#A2049
HP FutureSmart Firmware Linux Kernel Crypto API	IPsec ESP	FCS_COP.1(a)	[FIPS197] (AES) and [SP800-38A] (CBC) <u>AES-CBC</u> Modes: Decrypt, encrypt Key lens: 128, 256 (bits)	#A2050
		FCS_COP.1(c)	[FIPS180-4] SHA-1, SHA2-256, SHA2-384, SHA2-512	#A2050

Implementation	Usage	SFR	Standard and operation	CAVP certificate
		FCS_COP.1(g)	[FIPS198-1] HMAC-SHA-1, HMAC-SHA2-256, HMAC-SHA2-384, HMAC-SHA2-512 Prerequisite: SHS #A2050	#A2050
		FCS_RBG_EXT.1	[SP800-90A-Rev1] HMAC_DRBG <u>Keyed hash function</u> Mode: SHA2-256 (Uses HMAC-SHA2-256) Prerequisites: SHS #A2050, HMAC #A2050	#A2050
HP FutureSmart Firmware OpenSSL 1.1.1	Drive-lock password (BEV) generation	FCS_COP.1(a)	[FIPS197] (AES) and [SP800-38A] (CTR) <u>AES-CTR</u> Modes: Encrypt Key lens: 256 (bits) <u>AES-ECB</u> Modes: Encrypt Key lens: 256 (bits)	#A2051
		FCS_RBG_EXT.1	[SP800-90A-Rev1] CTR_DRBG(AES) <u>Counter</u> Modes: AES-256 (Uses AES-CTR-256) Prerequisite: AES #A2051	#A2051
	Trusted update and TSF testing (Whitelisting)	FCS_COP.1(b)	[FIPS186-4] <u>RSA 186-4</u> <i>Signature verification PKCS1.5</i>	#A2051

Implementation	Usage	SFR	Standard and operation	CAVP certificate
	(RSA sig(ver))		Mod 2048 SHA: SHA2-256 Prerequisite: SHA #A2051	
		FCS_COP.1(c)	[FIPS180-4] SHA2-256	#A2051

8 Abbreviations, Terminology and References

8.1 Abbreviations

AA	Assurance Activity
AES	Advanced Encryption Standard
AH	Authentication Header (IPsec)
Arm	Advanced RISC Machine
ASCII	American Standard Code for Information Interchange
BEV	Border Encryption Value
CA	Certificate Authority
CAVP	Cryptographic Algorithm Validation Program
CBC	Cipher Block Chaining
CC	Common Criteria
CCEVS	Common Criteria Evaluation and Validation Scheme
CCITT	Consultative Committee for International Telephony and Telegraphy
cert	certificate
cPP	Collaborative Protection Profile
CSEC	The Swedish Certification Body for IT Security
CSP	Critical Security Parameter
CTR	Counter mode
CTR_DRBG	Counter mode DRBG
CVL	Component Validation List
DEK	Data Encryption Key
DH	Diffie-Hellman
DLL	Dynamic-Link Library
DNS	Domain Name System
DRBG	Deterministic Random Bit Generator
DSA	Digital Signature Algorithm
DSS	Digital Signing Software
EAL	Evaluated Assurance Level
ECB	Electronic Code Book
ECC	Elliptic Curve Cryptography
ECDH	Elliptic Curve Diffie-Hellman

ECDSA	Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm
EE	Encryption Engine (FDE)
EEPROM	Electrically Erasable Programmable Read-Only Memory
EIA	Electronic Industries Alliance
ESN	Extended Sequence Numbers (IPsec)
ESP	Encapsulating Security Payload (IPsec)
EWS	Embedded Web Server
FDE	Full Drive Encryption
FFC	Finite Field Cryptography
FIPS	Federal Information Processing Standard
HCD	Hardcopy Device
HCDPP	Hardcopy Device Protection Profile
HMAC	Hashed Message Authentication Code
HP	Hewlett-Packard
I&A	Identification and Authentication
IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force
IKE	Internet Key Exchange (IPsec)
IP	Internet Protocol
IPv4	IP version 4
IPv6	IP version 6
IPsec	Internet Protocol Security
ISAKMP	Internet Security Association Key Management Protocol (IPsec)
ITU-T	International Telegraph Union Telecommunication Standardization Sector
KAS	Key Agreement Scheme
kbps	Kilobits Per Second
KDF	Key Derivation Function
LAN	Local Area Network
LDAP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
MFP	Multifunction Printer
MODP	Modular Exponential
n/a	Not applicable
NFC	Near Field Communication
NIAP	National Information Assurance Partnership

NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology
NTLM	Microsoft NT LAN Manager
NTS	Network Time Service
OSP	Organizational Security Policy
OSP	Open Extensibility Platform
OXPd	OXF device layer
PDF	Portable Document Format
PJL	Printer Job Language
PKCS	Public-Key Cryptography Standards
PP	Protection Profile
PS	Permission Set
PSK	Pre-Shared Key
PSTN	Public Switched Telephone Network
REST	Representational State Transfer
RFC	Request for Comments
RSA	Rivest-Shamir-Adleman
SA	Security Association
SAR	Security Assurance Requirement
SATA	Serial ATA Attachment
SED	Self-Encrypting Drive
SFP	Single-Function Printer
SFR	Security Functional Requirement
SHA	Secure Hash Algorithm
SHS	Secure Hash Standard
SMB	Server Message Block
SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
SP	Special Publication
SPD	Security Policy Database (IPsec)
SPD	Security Problem Definition (CC)
SPI	Serial Peripheral Interface
SSC	Security Subsystem Class
SSH	Secure Shell

ST	Security Target
TCG	Trusted Computing Group
TIA	Telecommunications Industry Association
TLS	Transport Layer Security
TOE	Target of Evaluation
TSF	TOE Security Functionality
TSP	TOE Security Policy
TSS	TOE Summary Specification
UI	User Interface
USB	Universal Serial Bus
W3C	World Wide Web Consortium
WINS	Windows Internet Name Service
WLAN	Wireless Local Area Network
WS	Web Services

8.2 Terminology

This section contains definitions of technical terms that are used with a meaning specific to this document. Terms defined in the [CC] are not reiterated here, unless stated otherwise.

Administrative User	This term refers to a user with administrative control of the TOE.
Authentication Data	This includes the Access Code and/or password for each user of the product.
Border Encryption Value (BEV)	A secret value passed to a storage encryption component such as a self-encrypting storage device.
Control Panel Application	An application that resides in the firmware and is selectable by the user via the Control Panel.
Data Encryption Key (DEK)	A key used to encrypt data-at-rest.
Device Administrator Password	The password used to restrict access to administrative tasks via EWS, REST, and the Control Panel interfaces. This password is also required to associate a user with the Administrator role. In product documentation, it may also be referred to as the Local Device Administrator Password, Local Device Administrator Access Code, the Device Password, or the Administrator Password.
External Interface	A non-hardcopy interface where either the input is being received from outside the TOE or the output is delivered to a destination outside the TOE.
Hardcopy Device (HCD)	This term generically refers to the product models in this Security Target.
Intermediate Key	A key used in a point between the initial user authorization and the DEK.

Near Field Communication (NFC)	Proximity (within a few inches) radio communication between two or more devices.
Submask	A submask is a bit string that can be generated and stored in a number of ways, such as passphrases, tokens, etc.
TOE Owner	A person or organizational entity responsible for protecting TOE assets and establishing related security policies.
User Security Attributes	Defined by functional requirement FIA_ATD.1, every user is associated with one or more security attributes which allow the TOE to enforce its security functions on this user.

8.3 References

CC **Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation**

Version 3.1R5

Date April 2017

Location <http://www.commoncriteriaportal.org/files/ccfiles/CCPART1V3.1R5.pdf>

Location <http://www.commoncriteriaportal.org/files/ccfiles/CCPART2V3.1R5.pdf>

Location <http://www.commoncriteriaportal.org/files/ccfiles/CCPART3V3.1R5.pdf>

CCECG **Common Criteria Evaluated Configuration Guide for HP Multifunction Printers**

HP Color LaserJet MFP E78625/E78630/E78635,
HP Color LaserJet Flow E78625/E78630/E78635,
HP LaserJet MFP E73130/E73135/E73140,
HP LaserJet Flow E73130/E73135/E73140

Author(s) HP Inc.

Edition 1

Date 8/2022

CCEVS-PL05 **Applicability and Relationship of NIST Cryptographic Algorithm Validation Program (CAVP) and Cryptographic Module Validation Program (CMVP) to NIAP’s Common Criteria Evaluation and Validation Scheme (CCEVS)**

Date 2019-12-06

Location https://www.niap-ccevs.org/Documents_and_Guidance/ccevs/policy-ltr-5-update4.pdf

CCEVS-TD0157 **FCS_IPSEC_EXT.1.1 - Testing SPDs**

Date 2017-06-15

Location https://www.niap-ccevs.org/Documents_and_Guidance/view_td.cfm?td_id=161

CCEVS-TD0176 **FDP_DSK_EXT.1.2 - SED Testing**

	Date	2017-04-11
	Location	https://www.niap-ccevs.org/Documents_and_Guidance/view_td.cfm?td_id=180
CCEVS-TD0219	NIAP Endorsement of Errata for HCD PP v1.0	
	Date	2017-07-07
	Location	https://www.niap-ccevs.org/Documents_and_Guidance/view_td.cfm?td_id=224
CCEVS-TD0253	Assurance Activities for Key Transport	
	Date	2017-11-08
	Location	https://www.niap-ccevs.org/Documents_and_Guidance/view_td.cfm?td_id=259
CCEVS-TD0261	Destruction of CSPs in flash	
	Date	2017-11-14
	Location	https://www.niap-ccevs.org/Documents_and_Guidance/view_td.cfm?td_id=267
CCEVS-TD0299	Update to FCS_CKM.4 Assurance Activities	
	Date	2018-03-16
	Location	https://www.niap-ccevs.org/Documents_and_Guidance/view_td.cfm?td_id=305
CCEVS-TD0393	Require FTP_TRP.1(b) only for printing	
	Date	2019-02-26
	Location	https://www.niap-ccevs.org/Documents_and_Guidance/view_td.cfm?td_id=403
CCEVS-TD0474	Removal of Mandatory Cipher Suite in FCS_TLS_EXT.1	
	Date	2019-12-04
	Location	https://www.niap-ccevs.org/Documents_and_Guidance/view_td.cfm?TD=0474
CCEVS-TD0494	Removal of Mandatory SSH Ciphersuite for HCD	
	Date	2020-02-20
	Location	https://www.niap-ccevs.org/Documents_and_Guidance/view_td.cfm?TD=0494
CCEVS-TD0562	Test activity for Public Key Algorithms	
	Date	2021-01-27
	Location	https://m.niap-ccevs.org/Documents_and_Guidance/view_td.cfm?TD=0562
CCEVS-TD0642	FCS_CKM.1(a) Requirement; P-384 keysize moved to selection	
	Date	2022-06-17
	Location	https://www.niap-ccevs.org/Documents_and_Guidance/view_td.cfm?TD=0642
FIPS180-4	Secure Hash Standard (SHS)	
	Date	2015-08-04

Location <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/FIPS/NIST.FIPS.180-4.pdf>

FIPS186-4 Digital Signature Standard (DSS)

Date 2013-07-19

Location <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/FIPS/NIST.FIPS.186-4.pdf>

FIPS197 Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)

Date 2001-11-26

Location <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/FIPS/NIST.FIPS.197.pdf>

FIPS198-1 The Keyed-Hash Message Authentication Code (HMAC)

Date 2008-07-16d

Location <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/FIPS/NIST.FIPS.198-1.pdf>

HCDPP Protection Profile for Hardcopy Devices; IPA, NIAP, and the MFP Technical Community

Version 1.0

Date 2015-09-10

Location https://www.niap-ccevs.org/pp/pp_hcd_v1.0.pdf

HCDPP-ERRATA Protection Profile for Hardcopy Devices - v1.0, Errata #1, June 2017

Version 1.0

Date 2017-06

Location https://www.niap-ccevs.org/pp/pp_hcd_v1.0-err.pdf

ISO-10118-3 Information technology -- Security techniques -- Hash-functions -- Part 3: Dedicated hash-functions

Version ISO/IEC 10118-3:2004

Date 2004-03

Location <https://www.iso.org/standard/39876.html>

KMD Key Management Description for HP and Samsung Hardcopy Devices with 5.3.2 Firmware and Linux 4.9.180

Author(s) HP Inc.

Version 1.5

Date 2022-10-12

**QuickSec73 IPsec Toolkit Feature Guide
Release 7.3**

Author(s) INSIDE Secure
Date December 5, 2018

RFC2407 The Internet IP Security Domain of Interpretation for ISAKMP

Author(s) D. Piper
Date 1998-11-01
Location <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2407.txt>

RFC2408 Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP)

Author(s) D. Maughan, M. Schertler, M. Schneider, J. Turner
Date 1998-11-01
Location <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2408.txt>

RFC2409 The Internet Key Exchange (IKE)

Author(s) D. Harkins, D. Carrel
Date 1998-11-01
Location <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2409.txt>

RFC3526 More Modular Exponential (MODP) Diffie-Hellman groups for Internet Key Exchange (IKE)

Author(s) Tero Kivinen, Mika Kojo
Date May 2003
Location <https://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3526.txt>

RFC3602 The AES-CBC Cipher Algorithm and Its Use with IPsec

Author(s) S. Frankel, R. Glenn, S. Kelly
Date 2003-09-01
Location <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3602.txt>

RFC4109 Algorithms for Internet Key Exchange version 1 (IKEv1)

Author(s) P. Hoffman
Date 2005-05-01
Location <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4109.txt>

RFC4301 Security Architecture for the Internet Protocol

Author(s) S. Kent, K. Seo
Date 2005-12-01
Location <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4301.txt>

- RFC4303** **IP Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)**
Author(s) S. Kent
Date 2005-12-01
Location <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4303.txt>
- RFC4304** **Extended Sequence Number (ESN) Addendum to IPsec Domain of Interpretation (DOI) for Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP)**
Author(s) S. Kent
Date December 2005
Location <https://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4304.txt>
- RFC4868** **Using HMAC-SHA-256, HMAC-SHA-384, and HMAC-SHA-512 with IPsec**
Author(s) S. Kelly, S. Frankel
Date 2007-05-01
Location <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4868.txt>
- SP800-38A** **Recommendation for Block Cipher Modes of Operation: Methods and Techniques**
Date 2001-12-01
Location <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/Legacy/SP/nistspecialpublication800-38a.pdf>
- SP800-56A-Rev2** **Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key Establishment Schemes Using Discrete Logarithm Cryptography**
Date May 2013
Location <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/SpecialPublications/NIST.SP.800-56Ar2.pdf>
- SP800-56A-Rev3** **Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key Establishment Schemes Using Discrete Logarithm Cryptography**
Date April 2018
Location <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/SpecialPublications/NIST.SP.800-90Ar1.pdf>
- SP800-90A-Rev1** **Recommendation for Random Number Generation Using Deterministic Random Bit Generators**
Date June 2015
Location <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/SpecialPublications/NIST.SP.800-90Ar1.pdf>